

# THE ANTIHISTAMINES

S. M. FEINBERG • S. MALKIEL • A. R. FEINBERG

CFTRI-MYSORE



2597

Antihistamines



L : 63

I o.

Ac no. 2597.

Page No.	Date of <del>Issue</del> <i>due</i>	Date of Return
3 AUG. 1953		
58	19 FEB 1958	19 FEB 1958
326	30 MAY 1958	1 MAY 1958
270.	2.9.59.	2/1
_____	28/11/68	28/11/68
_____	15 FEB 1972	14 FEB 1977
_____	22.10.74	12. 1074
_____	28/10/74	23-10-
_____	29/11/74	28-11-
_____	9/4/75	8/4
_____	18.12.75	17 5c.
_____	1.1.76	31.
_____	15.1.76	1 9c.
	28.1.76	a



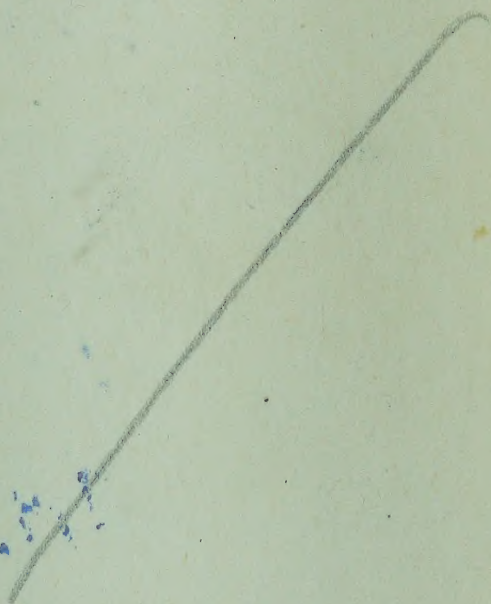
10. 10. 10

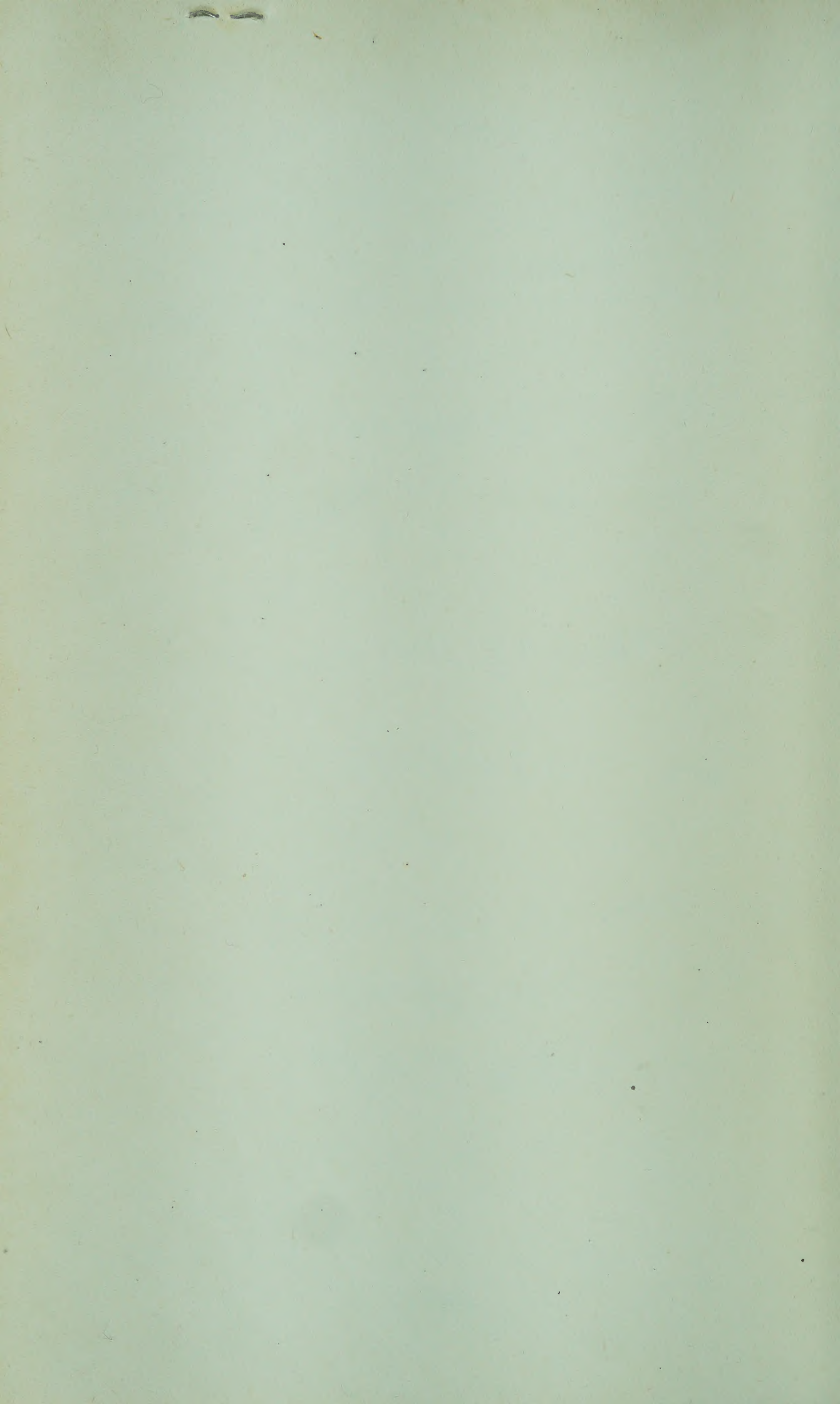
Flow

48-11-82

48-11-82

48-11-82







THE ANTIHISTAMINES

*Their Clinical Application*







# THE ANTI HISTAMINES

## *Their Clinical Application*

SAMUEL M. FEINBERG, M.D.

*Associate Professor of Medicine, Chief of Division of Allergy  
and Director of Allergy Research Laboratory*

SAUL MALKIEL, Ph.D., M.D.

*Assistant Professor of Medicine, Director of Research,  
Allergy Research Laboratory*

ALAN R. FEINBERG, M.D.

*Clinical Assistant in Medicine, Attending Physician  
in Allergy Clinic*

*Northwestern University Medical School*



THE YEAR BOOK PUBLISHERS • INC.

200 EAST ILLINOIS STREET • CHICAGO



COPYRIGHT 1950  
BY THE YEAR BOOK PUBLISHERS, INC.

✓  
2597

L; HSH: 63

N50

CFTRI-MYSORE



2597

Antihistamines:..



## Preface

IT WAS BUT NATURAL that the establishment of the prominence of the role of histamine in the mechanism of anaphylaxis and allergy would lead to an intensive search for substances which would combat histamine. The most profitable find in this hunt has been the discovery of the "antihistamines"—substances which combat histamine by competing with the latter on the cell receptors. The pioneering work of Fourneau, Bovet, Staub, Halpern and others in Europe was soon followed by the production of compounds which could be used clinically. Our interest in the field began with our preliminary experience early in 1945 when we were able to procure Antergan from France and Benadryl in this country.

During the past few years there have been intensive activity and rapid progress in this field, particularly in this country. From hundreds of compounds screened in laboratories about a score has been skimmed off as the cream of the crop for marketing. It is not surprising that here and there some low grade cream has been



saved and a richer product left behind. The concentrated experimental interest was diffused into the broader phase of clinical trial and to a still wider sphere of general clinical therapy. A voluminous literature of several thousand articles on the clinical and experimental phases of the antihistamines has resulted. The interest in the antihistamines finally became truly widespread when lay attention was involved as a result of publicity, advertising and the permission for over-the-counter sale of some of these compounds. At first utilized in a limited way in allergic manifestations, the antihistamines came to be employed in a number of other syndromes, including the common cold. The multiplicity of compounds, the various forms of the antihistamines creating virtually hundreds of antihistaminic products, the thousands of published articles, the claims and counterclaims of superiority and individuality by virtually all the pharmaceutical manufacturers of these compounds and the even more laudatory claims of each pharmaceutical representative have combined to produce utter confusion in the mind of the practitioner.

Our purpose here is to condense the facts, crystallize the essence and present the practical application of our knowledge of the antihistamines. Since in our laboratory and clinic we have pursued a study of these drugs from the very beginning and have studied almost all of those now marketed, often being the first to examine them clinically, we feel that we have a justification and obligation to prepare such a review.

This volume is primarily clinical, intended for every physician in any field of medicine in which the use of



antihistamines might be considered. The clinical work is based in large part on our own experience with several thousand therapeutic case-trials. It is also, of course, supplemented by the experience of others. In all reports, whether clinical or experimental, because of the nature of the book, it has been necessary to exclude the bulk of published papers. We are aware that we have omitted good ones as well as poor ones. Our only excuse is that we have been compelled to restrict ourselves to a limited number of references; however, we have endeavored to make these as representative as possible.

The book is divided into two sections, clinical and experimental. Although the purpose of this manual is to present the clinical application of the antihistamines, we have felt that for an intelligent understanding of therapy experimental findings cannot be ignored. However, the separation of the volume into two sections should enable the physician to refer easily to either portion. The experimental section is not exhaustive and the experimentalist engaged intensively in this field must perforce seek original sources. Nevertheless, this section can serve as an adequate starting point for the investigator to whom this field is relatively new.

We believe that the Appendix, which tabulates all known American products of antihistamines (except those sold directly to the public), will be of practical utility to the practitioner. We have made reasonable efforts to make it complete and up to date.

A number of associates have participated in the development of the experimental and clinical facts presented by us. Among those to whom we owe a debt of



appreciation are Dr. Sidney Friedlaender, Dr. Theodore B. Bernstein and Miss Betty J. Hargis. We are also grateful to members of the Department of Pharmacology, Dr. Carl A. Dragstedt, Dr. J. A. Wells and Dr. Karl F. Urbach for their numerous aids in our experimental program. We are especially appreciative of the help and friendship of Dr. Bernard Halpern of Paris, whose unstinting help and exchange of experiences have been an inspiration. We wish to take this occasion also to thank our many friends in the pharmaceutical industries who gave helpful advice or material assistance to enable us to carry on the experimental and clinical work. And finally, we are not unmindful of the warm, co-operative spirit and patience of the publisher's staff.

—S. M. F.

—S. M.

—A. R. F.



# Table of Contents

## EXPERIMENTAL STUDIES

1. Histamine . . . . .	13
Role in Anaphylaxis . . . . .	14
Pharmacology and Physiology . . . . .	20
Role in Allergy . . . . .	23
Combating Histamine . . . . .	24
2. The Chemistry of the Antihistamines . . . . .	35
Distribution and Metabolism . . . . .	48
Detection and Determination . . . . .	50
3. The Pharmacology of the Antihistamines . . . . .	52
4. Antihistamines in Experimental Hypersensitiv- ities . . . . .	73
Anaphylaxis . . . . .	73
Influence on Other Immunologic Responses . . . . .	81
5. Bioassay in Man . . . . .	86

## CLINICAL OBSERVATIONS

6. Respiratory Allergy . . . . .	103
Hay Fever and Perennial Vasomotor Rhinitis . . . . .	103
Asthma and Allergic Cough . . . . .	112
Individual Drugs—Results . . . . .	114



7.	Dermatoses . . . . .	131
	Urticaria and Angioneurotic Edema . . . . .	131
	Serum Sickness Syndrome . . . . .	136
	Dermographism . . . . .	138
	Atopic Dermatitis (Eczema) . . . . .	139
	Contact Dermatitis . . . . .	142
	Pruritus . . . . .	143
8.	Miscellaneous Manifestations . . . . .	146
	Allergy to Injected Agents . . . . .	146
	Diseases of the Eye . . . . .	147
	Collagen Diseases . . . . .	149
	Tuberculosis . . . . .	150
	The Common Cold . . . . .	151
	Gastrointestinal Disease . . . . .	158
	Motion Sickness, Nausea and Vomiting . . . . .	159
	Radiation Sickness . . . . .	161
	Diseases of the Nervous System . . . . .	162
	Other Conditions . . . . .	165
9.	Administration and Dosage . . . . .	168
	Conditions Determining Size of Dose . . . . .	168
	Dosage of Individual Drugs . . . . .	171
	Frequency of Administration . . . . .	176
	Selection of Antihistamine . . . . .	178
	Drug Combinations . . . . .	180
	Method of Administration . . . . .	183
10.	Toxic Effects . . . . .	191
	Common and Minor Side Actions . . . . .	192
	Toxicity Features of Individual Drugs . . . . .	196
	Severe or Unusual Effects and Special Studies . . . . .	203
	Self-Medication—Its Hazards . . . . .	213
	Appendix. Proprietary Antihistaminic Preparations . . . . .	220
	References . . . . .	232
	Index . . . . .	277



# EXPERIMENTAL STUDIES







## CHAPTER 1

# Histamine

IN A CONSIDERATION of the therapeutic effects of the antihistamines it is proper to consider the evidence on which is based the conclusion that histamine does play a part in anaphylaxis and allergy. The fact that the significance of histamine has been discussed many times indicates that the question has not been settled beyond dispute; however, there are but few antagonists to the fundamental concept that histamine is related causally to the phenomena of anaphylaxis and that it is likewise related causally, albeit by analogy, to the phenomena of allergy.

The subjects of anaphylaxis and histamine are inextricably interwoven in the literature, and it will be seen that not only do anaphylactic shock and histamine shock strikingly resemble each other but the agents which prevent one will prevent the other. The term anaphylaxis was apparently originated by Portier and Richet (428) in 1902 to describe the phenomenon of sudden death which occurred in dogs which had been reinoculated with the toxins extracted from the sea anemone. The

relationship between anaphylaxis and allergy may be difficult to reconcile since we have come to regard allergy as any manifestation of specific hypersensitivity, exclusive of the anaphylaxis produced in experimental animals. Nevertheless, these phenomena are related and there is abundant evidence that histamine plays the major villainous role in both sequences (91, 134, 449).

#### ROLE IN ANAPHYLAXIS

The identification of histamine as a constituent in various animal tissues by Barger and Dale (27), Abel and Kubota (4) and others enhanced the plausibility of its involvement in anaphylactic reaction because by about the same time Friedemann's (200) concept of a humoral mechanism for shock had lost a good deal of its force. Dale and Laidlaw (118) in 1911 had already demonstrated that histamine injections caused symptoms which were similar to anaphylaxis. The identification of histamine in normal tissues came in 1927 when Best *et al.* (36) demonstrated its presence, especially in the lungs, in quantities adequate to serve, physiologically, as a possible source of histamine within the organism in the event that it might be released. These observations together with those of Lewis and Grant (343) and Hare (263), who isolated from urticarial wheals an H-substance which would stimulate uterine contractions, and of Lewis (342), who expressed a concept of anaphylaxis involving an H-substance liberated from the cells, revived the dormant interest in the possibility that histamine was the long-sought common denominator in anaphylaxis and allergy. The all but complete indict-



ment of histamine came from Dale (117) in 1929. He stated that "we may picture the anaphylactic shock, therefore, as the result of cellular injury, due to the intracellular reaction of the antigen with an aggravating antibody. Whether this is general or localized in a particular organ, histamine will be released and its effects will be prominent in the resulting reaction imposing a general resemblance to the syndrome produced by histamine itself, on the symptoms seen in each species. The cell injury, however, is not limited to the degree required to produce a release of histamine, and involves other and more direct results. Such a conception is in accordance with all the facts as yet available, and it has the advantage of rendering intelligible, not only the striking resemblance between symptoms of the anaphylactic reaction and those produced by injecting histamine, but also the various and equally significant points of difference between the two syndromes."

The first important experiments designed to demonstrate an actual release of histamine in association with the anaphylactic reaction were those of Watanabe (558). He indicated that there probably were differences in the histamine content of the dog's liver and the guinea pig's lung before and after shock. The word "probably" is Dragstedt's (134) who indicated that Watanabe did not examine the tissues of the same animal before and after shock because he knew there was a pronounced variation from animal to animal in the tissue content of histamine. However, Dragstedt and Gebauer-Fuelnegg (136, 220) and Bartosch, Feldberg and Nagel (28) soon verified the histamine hypothesis

and showed that histamine was liberated during an anaphylactic reaction in an intact animal. Dragstedt and Mead (137) showed that the striking increase in the histamine of the blood and lymph of dogs after anaphylaxis was sufficient to explain the shock, and Code (89) noted that the amounts of histamine liberated in shocked guinea pigs were sufficient to produce anaphylactic symptoms.

These and succeeding events seem to constitute a valid argument that histamine is undoubtedly a potent factor in the production of the symptoms of anaphylactic shock. However, evidence for its role in the mechanism of production of allergic manifestations in man, one of us (174) stated, "has not kept pace with that for anaphylaxis in animals." This situation is readily understood, for controlled studies on allergic shock in man are not feasible and, further, the amount of histamine in allergic manifestations in man is quantitatively much less than it is in anaphylaxis in animals. With respect to the histamine concept of anaphylaxis and allergy, Dragstedt (133) outlined the possible theoretical approaches to the control of allergic reactions. They are (1) reduction of histamine available for liberation, (2) prevention of liberation of histamine, (3) inactivation of released histamine and (4) decrease of effects of histamine. Several points of circumstantial evidence which Dragstedt (135) proposed indicate that histamine plays an important role in human allergy. (1) There is the analogy which exists between anaphylaxis in animals and allergic reactions in man. There are both similarities and differences in these reactions, but he agreed with



Zinsser who stated that allergy in man "is based on an immunological mechanism basically identical with anaphylaxis in animals, specifically modified by human anatomical and physiological conditions." (2) There is abundant evidence that histamine occurs in human tissue as well as in animal tissues and that it occurs in adequate amounts to produce pharmacologic symptoms. (3) There is sufficient evidence that the effects of histamine are qualitatively consistent with certain allergic manifestations. (4) Histamine, or at least a histamine-like substance, is actually released during allergic reactions in man, and (5) the therapeutic measures which counteract the effects of histamine are of value in the treatment of allergic manifestations.

The protagonists of the histamine theory are not without their opponents, however. One of the earliest challenges arose from the observations of Friedberger *et al.* (199) that desensitized or antianaphylactic guinea pigs do not show desensitization to histamine, nor does histamine desensitize the animals to the antigen. Wells (566) pointed out that histamine should not be expected to desensitize if it is the product of the antigen-antibody reaction, since it is this reaction alone that is prevented by desensitization. Wells (565), however, did sum up certain objections to the histamine theory as follows: (1) Histamine fails to desensitize animals or tissues although it produces strong reactions in uterine muscle strip which has been desensitized. (2) Histamine does not produce the temperature reactions or the coagulation changes commonly seen in anaphylaxis. (3) Quinine augments the susceptibility of sensitized ani-

mals to foreign protein yet it does not affect the intoxication caused by histamine. Again, contrary evidence to the histamine theory may, perhaps, be accepted from the work of Code and Hester (92), who observed a fall in the blood histamine of the calf and the horse during anaphylaxis, and of Rose and Weil (460, 461), who made similar observations in the rabbit. The latter, apparently contradictory, findings but serve to strengthen the histamine hypothesis, according to Dragstedt (134), for he and his co-workers (138) demonstrated that the addition of antigen to the blood as it is perfused through the lungs of a sensitized rabbit results in both a leukopenia and a decreased histamine content in the recovered blood. This result can be fully appreciated when it is disclosed that Code (90) had previously shown that the leukocytes of rabbit's blood contain a large amount and a substantial portion of the whole blood histamine and that Katz (299) found that the addition of antigen to the blood of the sensitized rabbit resulted in release of histamine from the blood cells. The failure to detect an elevated blood level of histamine does not negate the evidence that histamine is involved in tissue reactions, for histamine leaves the blood stream with extreme rapidity and extraction methods do not always detect physiologically active amounts.

Actually, the histamine theory of anaphylactic shock is tenable only as a partial explanation. Even Dale's (117) statement of the hypothesis is explicit in this respect. The theory can explain smooth muscle contraction, capillary dilatation and permeability and glandular secretion. Heparin activity accounts for other features



of anaphylaxis, such as diminished blood coagulation (286) and the anticomplementary effects. Segal *et al.* (488) appear in doubt as to whether the toxic substance

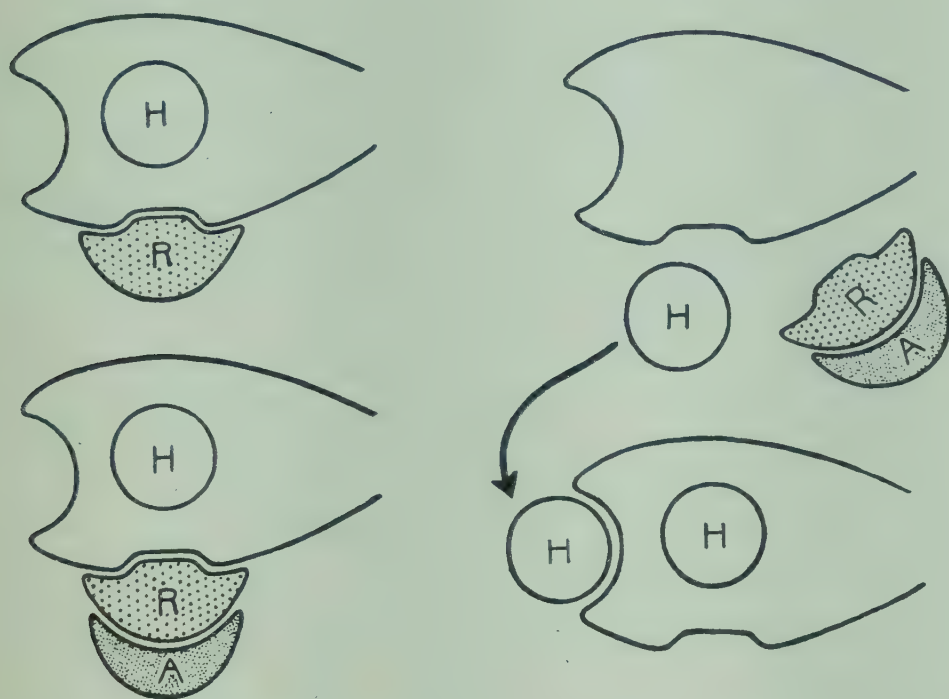


FIG. 1.—Histamine release mechanism in allergy (some of these diagrammatic concepts are theoretical). *Top left*, sensitized cell. Allergic cell has attached sensitizing antibodies, the reagins *R*. All cells, allergic or not, have histamine or its precursor, *H*, which causes no harm while within the cell. *Bottom left*, antigen-reagin union. Antigen *A* unites with reagin *R* on the sensitized cell. *Right*, release and action of histamine. Union of antigen and reagin causes release of histamine from within sensitized cell. (Histamine from such cells or unsensitized cells may also be released by other stimuli.) This histamine is free to attach to receptors on adjacent cells, causing damage which results in allergic symptoms.

released by the cells of the shock organ is histamine-like or choline-like; Farber and co-workers (165) found no evidence to indicate that acetylcholine was released in greater amounts from lungs and intestines of sensi-

tized guinea pigs shocked in vitro than from normal lungs or intestines.

### PHARMACOLOGY AND PHYSIOLOGY

It may seem remiss to discuss the chemistry and physiology of histamine after the presentation of its role in anaphylaxis, but since the physiology and pharmacology is to be presented in somewhat greater detail in a later chapter there seems to be some justification. Chemically, histamine is  $\beta$ -iminazolyethylamine; the structural formula appears in Figure 2. It was synthesized by Windaus and Vogt (575) in 1907. Actually, histamine is a decarboxylation product of the amino acid, histidine, which is present in all complete proteins, and the early studies of Ackermann and Kutscher (7) indicated that various bacteria could accomplish this decarboxylation.

Histamine is a strongly basic, water soluble, white crystalline organic compound which is usually dispensed as the phosphate salt. The detection and determination of histamine has been essentially by bioassay technics, involving methods such as contraction of guinea pig ileum or uterine horn. Advances in paper chromatography have resulted in technics for the identification of histamine in blood (548), urine and feces (547). Quantitative measurements have been made by such bioassay technics as comparisons with the fall of blood pressure produced by a standard histamine dose. Colorimetric chemical methods have also been described (26). The isolation of histamine in a high state of purity and in quantitative amounts from biologic fluids has recently been accomplished (370).



Physiologic studies of histamine reveal that it is a powerful vasodilator in certain species. If injected locally into the skin, capillaries in contact with the drug dilate and there results a reddening known as a flare, followed shortly by a localized edema known as a wheal. The wheal is caused by the passage of considerable plasma protein and fluid into the extracellular space of surrounding tissues by virtue of the change of permeability of vessel walls. In the cat and rat a constriction re-

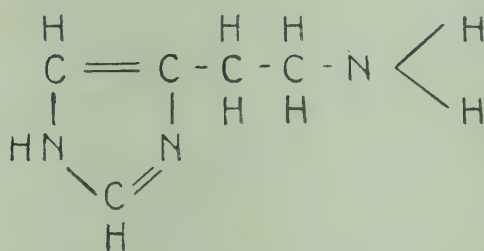


FIG. 2.—Histamine.

sults, in contrast to the dilatory effects in man, monkey and dog. Histamine acts on the heart indirectly, principally through reflex action from vasodilatation. Smooth muscle is stimulated by direct action and many studies on uterine muscles and the musculature of the bronchioles have been made. Histamine is believed to be identical with the secretagogue gastrin, because it is a powerful stimulant of the gastric glands as well as of other glands. Histamine or a histamine-like substance is released from tissue cells by stimuli such as toxins, venoms and acute burns as well as in anaphylaxis in animals and in allergic conditions in man. It is apparently excreted by the kidney and inactivated in the kidney, lung and liver by an enzyme, histaminase. Both the adrenal me-

dulla and cortex are involved in the regulating mechanism of histamine metabolism. In addition to the metabolism, Urbach (547) suggested that histamine is acetylated in the intestinal contents to acetyl histamine which is partially absorbed from the intestinal tract and excreted in urine (12, 464) as well as in feces.

Some histamine effects other than those which will be discussed from a pharmacologic viewpoint or which result in specific allergic manifestations are interesting enough to warrant brief mention. Rose (452) found that enough histamine could be injected so that definite symptoms of histamine intoxication appeared but without a demonstrable increase in the blood histamine levels which were determined periodically. This seems to indicate that the effect is apart from the action of blood histamine which disappears rapidly and probably acts cellularly. The basal metabolic rate rises during the intravenous administration of histamine. This increase is transitory and drops soon after the drug is stopped (425). Histamine given to asthmatic patients by any route caused a definite but variable bronchoconstriction, measured by the reduction in vital capacity. No significant reductions were noted in normal control subjects or in patients having histories of other severe allergic tendencies (111). The repeated administration of histamine to experimental animals produced an inflammatory reaction in the vascular system of the lung and heart in the endo- and myocardium. Certain lesions common in all species of animals were edema of the endocardium, inflammatory cell collections in the myocardium, edema of the heart valves and perivascular edema and inflam-



matory cell exudate about blood vessels. Atelectatic areas were also found in the lungs (172).

### ROLE IN ALLERGY

The relationship of histamine to allergy up to this point has been considered essentially by inference, but evidence has accumulated over recent years which indicates its presence or release in allergic manifestations. The absence or presence of histamine, however, is relatively of no significance in assigning the odium, allergic manifestation, to any given condition. Thus, Katz and Cohen (301) found an *in vitro* release of histamine when the blood of an allergic person was incubated with the specific allergen. Similarly, histamine was released into blister fluid when the allergen was injected locally into clinically sensitive patients (300). Although Rose (453) reported pronounced fluctuation of the histamine content in the blood of patients suffering from diverse allergies, urticaria excepted, Giunchi and Serafini (227) found normal values in most subjects with hay fever: a certain number of the patients showed high values. Hjort, Worden and Hagle (270) also failed to find any spectacular increments of histamine in either active or latent allergic states. Specific desensitization did not produce an increase in the histamine content (227) although physical exercise did (493, 494). Control nonallergic subjects were normal under all circumstances. Rose (455) determined that asthmatic patients excreted large amounts of histamine in the urine, compared with those for normal persons. In addition, he and his co-workers (456) found that certain tissues of

allergic man, such as antral mucosa, skin and lung, were much richer in histamine than similar tissues from non-allergic subjects. For example, lung tissue from asthmatics contained as much as 115  $\mu$ g. per Gm. compared with 15–35  $\mu$ g. per Gm. for normal lung tissue. Urticarial skin lesions were found definitely to have a lower histamine value than normal or surrounding healthy skin (406, 413, 419). From studies on the effect of various antihistamines on experimental sensitizations, Mayer (385) was forced to conclude that an H-substance plays an important role in contact dermatitis. Because of current interest, it is noteworthy to report that no striking difference was found in total histamine activity between secretions of the "common cold" and those of allergic rhinitis, although concurrent control examinations of "normal" secretions were not done (541). There was no correlation between the number of eosinophils and the amount of histamine.

### COMBATING HISTAMINE

The evidence assigning histamine an active role in allergy and anaphylaxis prompted observers to attempt methods of reducing histamine manifestations. These methods, if they are to be effective, must be based on one or more of the following sequences of events: (1) preventing the antibody-antigen union; (2) modifying the action of the liberated histamine by drugs which have a reversing action (epinephrine); (3) inactivating the histamine (histaminase); (4) desensitizing the tissues against the action of histamine by graded doses of histamine itself; (5) blocking the action of the hista-



mine by compounds which unite with or compete for histamine or which fix themselves on the effector cells and so inhibit action of histamine; (6) preventing the formation or release of histamine (antihistaminogenesis).

Initial attempts were based on the belief that tolerance for histamine in man and in animals might be

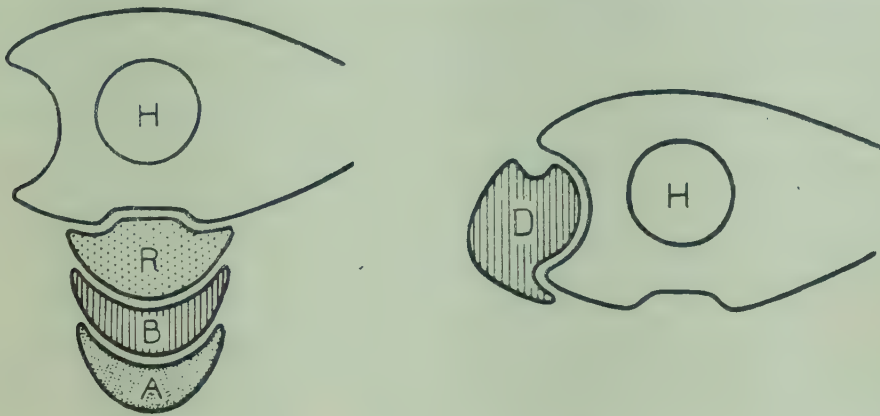


FIG. 3.—Methods of combating histamine. *Left*, desensitization. Desensitization produces blocking antibody *B*, which attaches to reagin *R* and prevents union of reagin and antigen *A*. *Right*, chemical block. Antihistaminic drug *D* attaches to histamine receptor, thus blocking attachment of released histamine.

raised through appropriate procedures. Closely related was the attempt to desensitize the individual on the basis that he was sensitive to histamine. Much study was given to this method of attacking the problem and widely varying reports of success and failure in various allergic conditions appeared in the literature. The more recent experiments of Farmer (166) suggested that desensitization to histamine, determined by the uterine strip method, might be possible in guinea pigs. This could be accomplished both by parenteral and by oral administration (167). In this, he apparently corroborated earlier

work, such as that of St. Karady (476), and was in turn substantiated by Karady (297) and Essex and Horton (160) in 1941. Some evidence (188), too, has accumulated from our laboratory that guinea pigs can be made more resistant to histamine. Tolerance has been reported (163, 302) in other animals, although Wells, Gray and Dragstedt (567) stated that they failed to modify the histamine tolerance in dogs, and Farmer (168, 169) noted that histamine pretreatment had no effect on the establishment of active sensitization on the uterine strip contraction to the antigen in egg-white-sensitized guinea pigs.

Wells and his associates (567) criticized much of the previous work because of the inconsistent results and because the procedures, in many instances, bore little resemblance to the desensitization which is used clinically. This latter comment is especially valid. In this respect, too, it is noteworthy that Selye (491) has indicated that single or repeated injections of toxic doses of many drugs produce the "alarm reaction" which is followed by a nonspecific tolerance. This concept is particularly interesting because Selye (490), in comparing symptoms of the first stage of the alarm reaction with those of histamine poisoning and anaphylactic shock, found that the liberation of large quantities of histamine or similar substances from tissues is probably the common factor for the similarity in the symptomatology. The second stage is associated with an enlargement of the adrenal cortex and an increased elaboration of the adrenotrophic principle from the pituitary.

Nevertheless, despite the theoretical objections, clin-



ical treatment in certain cases seems to offer some evidence favoring the validity of the sensitivity theory. Horton (275) reported that he reduced the frequency and severity of headaches due to histaminic action by the injection of small doses of histamine. Additional reports on histamine desensitization therapy have appeared in which promising results were obtained in such conditions as perennial and seasonal allergic rhinitis (170, 171, 313), eczema and contact dermatitis (313), penicillin drug sickness (431) and migraine (373, 537). In evaluating this use of histamine, Curry (113) stated that desensitization is recommended in the treatment of histamine cephalalgia, migraine and Ménière's disease. One of us (174) had previously taken the stand which summarized the then current opinion of most clinicians that the effectiveness of histamine in allergic conditions was exaggerated and that whatever beneficial results were obtained must be explained on a basis other than desensitization. Recent reports make one now hesitate to speak with that degree of finality and skepticism and should be further evaluated and corroborated even though the criticisms (567) and the findings of Selye (490-492) would still be tenable.

Desensitization to histamine received a different approach with the work of Fell, Rodney and Marshall (191, 451). They were of the opinion that, since histamine failed to produce antibodies in allergic patients, application of the theory of hapten action, so ably demonstrated by Landsteiner (322), to a histamine-protein conjugate might prove effective. In their work on animals they found that, although specific antiserums of

high precipitin titer could not be produced, specific cross reactions to the hapten occurred and histamine would inhibit the specific reaction. Animals immunized to the histamine azoprotein (Hapamine) were definitely more resistant to anaphylaxis and the effects of histamine. Apart from their clinical results (96, 497), the experimental findings were criticized by Coffin and Kabat (93) who failed to confirm the results on the protection of immunized animals against histamine and to establish whether any antibodies were formed to the haptenic histamine. Farmer (169) also failed to modify the uterine strip reaction in egg-white-sensitive guinea pigs pretreated with histamine azoprotein. Finally, reports (143, 266) have appeared which fail to substantiate clinical use of this substance; these experiences seem to be in accord with those of most clinicians (174).

In 1929, Best (35) showed that some tissues contain an enzyme capable of destroying histamine and it was subsequently demonstrated that such destruction occurred when the two were mixed and incubated. It naturally followed that here might be a means of combating histamine manifestations in their relation to allergy. Corroborating the clinical observation that women often enjoyed a remission from allergic manifestations during pregnancy were the findings that the blood of pregnant women had a high histaminolytic activity which was correlated to its increased histaminase content (13, 287, 296, 532). Rose *et al.* (457), confirming the observation of an elevated plasma histaminase level in pregnant women, also showed that a deficient histaminase level was present when asthma persisted during preg-



nancy (458). However, animal experiments (331, 467) have failed to reveal usefulness of histaminase as a histamine combatant, despite the results of Karady and Browne (298), which could not be confirmed (37, 113).

As histamine or a histamine-like substance began to be more and more accepted as an important factor in allergy and anaphylaxis, increased attention was given to the development of histamine-inhibiting agents, specific and nonspecific. An excellent review by Hill and Martin (268) appeared as early as 1932 listing 165 substances or methods which had been described in experiments to inhibit anaphylactic shock. Among the agents which showed evidence of some inhibiting action were atropine, barium chloride, barium sulfate, reduction of barometric pressure, chloral hydrate, heparin, benzol in large dose before and during sensitization, intercurrent infection with tuberculosis, sodium bicarbonate and multiple sensitization and treatment with one of the several antigens. In subsequent years many more nonspecific means were utilized in an attempt to inhibit anaphylactic and histamine shock; since none of these proved of decided clinical value, only those observations will be considered which seem to be of theoretical interest.

Rattlesnake venom (crotalin) has occasionally been used. The experiments of Frank (197) indicated that although crotalin protects against anaphylactic shock the mechanism is that of a histamine release which produces an increased tolerance for the histamine. The rationale of potassium therapy in allergy may have some basis,

for Carlson and Whitehead (77) observed that potassium salts are of value in prevention of deaths (60–75 per cent) against the minimum lethal dose of the antigen in sensitized animals. However, no clinical results were observed with this therapy in allergic manifestations (472a). The widespread use of salicylates in the treatment of rheumatic fever prompted many investigators to note their effects on immunologic processes. Campbell (73) reported that acetylsalicylic acid temporarily interfered with the antibody-antigen reaction in anaphylaxis but although it was a true antianaphylactic drug it did not counteract histamine. These findings were disputed by Swyer (534), who noted that salicylate had an antihistaminic effect on the spreading of histamine, whereas Smith and Humphrey (507) claimed that sodium salicylate in blood concentrations as high as 50 mg. per 100 ml. conferred no appreciable protection against acute anaphylactic shock. On the other hand, salicylate exerted a protective action on passive Arthus' reactions and especially on Schwartzman phenomena, indicating that the effect was not a direct antihistaminic effect but appeared to be due to some action on the local blood capillaries.

Current interest seems high with respect to the adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) and cortisone, especially since the reports (43, 44, 150, 233, 433, 454, 459) on their use in allergic manifestations. Animal experiments were thereupon conducted to determine the effect of ACTH and cortisone in anaphylactic and histamine shock. Although Orskov (411) claimed to have protected sensitized guinea pigs against passive anaphy-



laxis by ACTH, the report of Leger, Leith and Rose (328) and our preliminary work (377) indicate that pretreatment of animals with ACTH or cortisone fails to protect guinea pigs against active sensitization and shock, passive anaphylactic and histamine shock.

One of the first groups of agents found to have the property of inhibiting the characteristic actions of histamine in laboratory animals was demonstrated by Edlbacher, Jucker and Baur (147) to be certain of the amino acids. These amino acids, cysteine, histidine and derivatives and arginine and derivatives were also used by many other investigators (144, 318, 450, 503). Some basis for their use may be the following: Ackermann (6) assumed that the imine group in arginine and histidine would compete for the identical group of the imidazol ring of histamine, the group believed to be responsible for its anchoring ability to the cell receptors. This was verified for the derivatives of Rocha e Silva (449, 450), and imidazol in the hands of Morris and Dragstedt (399) displayed an antihistaminic effect on isolated guinea pig intestine. These substances, however, were of too little effectiveness for therapy and of too high toxicity for use in either animals or man. Notwithstanding, clinical reports (292) on amino acid therapy of allergic diseases have appeared, but the results appear to be of questionable value.

The dawn of the antihistaminic era broke in 1933 when Fourneau and Bovet (195) reported that certain phenolic ethers had the property of inhibiting or counteracting the action of histamine and that the most effective of these was 2-isopropyl-5-methylphenoxyethyl-di-

ethylamine, known as 929F. Staub and Bovet (517) found that although 929F had definite antianaphylactic properties, since it protected guinea pigs against two lethal doses of histamine, it also produced definite toxic effects in animals. Because of this toxicity, Staub (514) investigated a Fourné compound which contained the ethylenediamine radical. This product, 1571F, described as N,N-diethyl-N'-phenyl-N'-ethyl-ethylenediamine, was also found to be antihistaminic and antianaphylactic. These initial investigations released the flood waters and in relatively rapid succession there appeared 2325RP, 2339RP (Antergan), 2786RP (Neo-Antergan), diphenhydramine hydrochloride, tripeleminamine hydrochloride and many others with which we all are familiar. A more complete discussion of the chemistry of these compounds appears in the following chapter, and the pharmacologic and antianaphylactic effects are discussed in Chapters 3 and 4, respectively.

An intriguing approach to the prevention of histamine activity is through inhibiting histamine formation, that is, antihistaminogenesis. It was previously stated that histamine could be released from histidine by enzyme action and it is presumed that histidine decarboxylase is the enzyme which is partially responsible, at least, for histamine formation in the animal body. Moreover, certain substances with phenolic hydroxyl groups were found to inhibit the action of histidine decarboxylase (30, 381, 572) *in vitro*. These substances, the flavonoids (vitamin P-like), were investigated some years ago and results of their use in the prevention of anaphylactic shock have since been the subject of controversy. The



early literature includes the reports of Hullstrung and Hach (278) who found pretreatment with vitamin P of no effect on anaphylaxis in the guinea pig, whereas Hiramatsu (269) found it effective. This subject was recently again brought into discussion by the discovery of the effect of rutin on capillary permeability. Thus Raiman, Later and Necheles (432) and Martin and Moss (382) stated that pretreatment with rutin is effective in protecting sensitized animals against anaphylactic shock, while at the same time an array of negative evidence was presented by Roth and Sheppard (471), Levitan (337, 338) and Arbesman, Neter and Becker (19). In support of the opposing forces is the inclusive report of Clark and Mackay (87) who studied over 15 flavonoid compounds, including rutin and citrin (vitamin P). Our own preliminary results (376) also showed that the catechins are without effect.

A few words will suffice to discuss therapy which is not designed to attack any of the events previously mentioned as occurring in the histamine sequence. Such methods of therapy, although essentially symptomatic, are here mentioned because they more or less deal with the repair of damage which results from the antibody-antigen mechanism or the histamine release. The methods correcting histamine effects such as bronchoconstriction or secretion have been in popular use for some time. Epinephrine is usually the drug of choice in most cases of asthma and allergy. Its action on the bronchi is probably twofold: it constricts blood vessels, thus diminishing turgescence and swelling of the bronchial mucosa, and it stimulates the sympathetic nerve endings, thereby

antagonizing the bronchoconstrictive effect of the overstimulated vagus. Ephedrine, which has similar actions, is particularly useful as a substitute in mild attacks and when more prolonged action is needed. Its chief advantages over epinephrine are its effectiveness by oral administration and the longer duration of action. Its disadvantages are that its action is less complete and that often it has no effect at the height of the attack.

Drugs which may have a synergistic action when combined with ephedrine are theophylline, theobromine, sodium salicylate, theobromine calcium salicylate and similar drugs. Aminophylline (theophylline-ethylene-diamine) given intravenously is a valuable drug although by no means effective in all asthmatic episodes. Some acute attacks are not relieved by this drug, and its behavior indicates that it is more effective in the severe and prolonged asthmatic attack than in the early acute attack. Aminophylline has a direct relaxing effect on bronchial musculature which has been constricted by histamine or anaphylactic reaction.

Iodides are among the oldest, time-honored remedies. Although their action is not entirely understood, it is evident that one effect is the production of a thin bronchial secretion. The iodides are best suited to modify the pathologic phase of asthma wherein lies the production of a tenacious and highly viscous mucus which plugs the bronchioles and adds to the total bronchiolar obstruction. Other therapies include rectal ether in status asthmaticus, sedatives such as chloral hydrate, barbiturates, etc., aspirin, codeine, coffee, liquor, etc., all of which if used judiciously may at times produce the desired effect.



## CHAPTER 2

# The Chemistry of the Antihistamines

HAVING CONSIDERED the role that histamine plays in the anaphylactic and allergic reaction, it seems pertinent at this time to identify chemically, in a more detailed discussion, those compounds which we now know as the antihistamines. Actually, the term "antihistaminic compound" has been under criticism (528). Antihistamines are but a special category of the spasmolytics, but justification for their classification is found in the extraordinary high specificity of these compounds in antagonizing the physiologic effects of histamine. Further justification may be the close quantitative relationship between any given amount of histamine and the quantity of antihistamine necessary to antagonize it. The high specificity immediately excludes some of the compounds antagonistic to histamine which were discussed in the preceding chapter, namely, the amino acids, histamine complexes, histamine azoprotein, atropine, epinephrine, aminophylline, etc.

In 1933, Bovet and Maderni (50) and Fourneau and Bovet (195, 196) studied the sympatholytic activities of a series of compounds, including 929F, in connection with research for new antimalarials. The anti-anaphylactic capacity of 929F was described by Staub and Bovet (517). In 1939, another compound, 1571F, was found to be superior to others studied. Staub (514–516) discussed the two series which were represented by 929F (an ether) and 1571F (an amine). She found that the amines were more specifically antihistaminic in counteracting histamine shock, while the ethers, being less specific, were more effective in relieving histamine-induced bronchial asthma. This observation has since found some confirmation, probably because the latter group contains those compounds which are more sedative and antispasmodic.

This discussion of the chemistry of the antihistamines will include those substances which have some interest historically, clinically or experimentally. For a more complete list and description of those which had been experimentally tried up to July 1947, the reader is referred to the excellent review of Hutterer (283). In this survey the amine type, represented by 1571F and its related ethylenediamine derivatives, will be presented in approximate chronological order, followed by discussion of the ether type, the monamines and a miscellaneous group.

#### ETHYLENEDIAMINE DERIVATIVES

1571F.—Compounds similar to 1571F, N,N-diethyl-N'-phenyl-N'-ethyl-ethylenediamine, were reported by



Braun and his co-workers (54) in 1917. Bovet and Staub (51) and Staub (514–516) investigated the antihistaminic and antianaphylactic properties and found that 1571F protected guinea pigs against 10 lethal doses

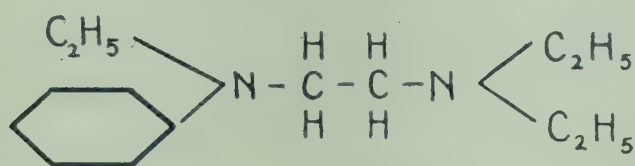


FIG. 4.—1571F.

of histamine. While rather nontoxic for animals, it was found to be extremely toxic to man.

**2339RP (*Antergan*).**—This compound, N,N-dimethyl-N'-benzyl-N'-phenylethylenediamine, was described by Halpern (247) in 1942 as having been pre-

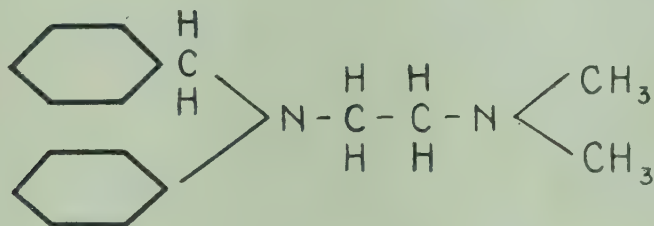


FIG. 5.—2339RP (*Antergan*).

pared in the Rhone-Poulenc laboratories. He studied its pharmacologic and antihistaminic properties and compared its actions with those of 1571F and 2325RP, among others.

**Neo-Antergan.**—The choice of nomenclature is perhaps bad for this drug, for it is not a derivative of Antergan. Rather, it is N,N-dimethyl-N'-p-methoxybenzyl-N'-2-pyridyl-ethylenediamine. Bovet and his associates

(49, 52) reported that Horclois prepared this compound in 1942 in the Rhone-Poulenc laboratories. Pharmacologic studies carried out by them indicated

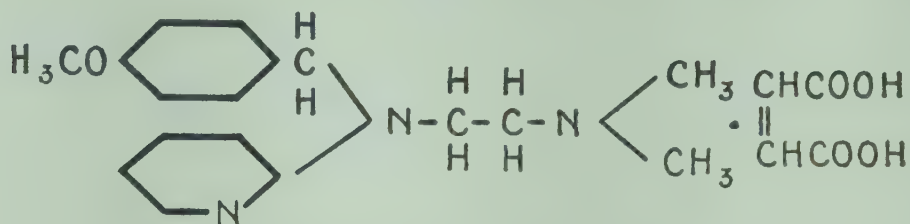


FIG. 6.—Neo-Antergan.

that Neo-Antergan was effective in diminishing the reactivities of the guinea pig to histamine. According to Halpern and Walthert (261) it was about three times as active as Antergan in human beings.

3015RP.—Gilman and Shirley (226) described the preparation of a previously synthesized diethyl analogue of 10-( $\beta$ -N,N-dimethyl-aminoethyl)-phenothiazine. Early

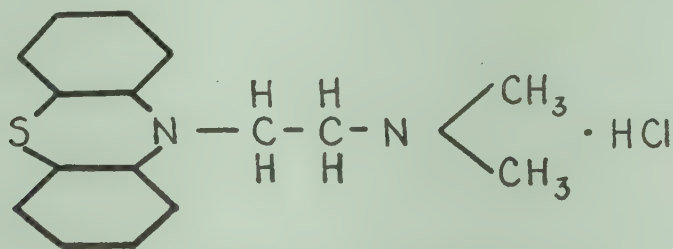


FIG. 7.—3015RP.

pharmacologic studies were carried out by Halpern *et al.* (257), who found it to be about eight to 10 times as active as Neo-Antergan and also to give satisfactory results in human beings (253).

3277RP (*Phenergan*).—This methyl analogue of 3015RP, 10-(2-N,N-dimethylamino-1-propyl)-pheno-



thiazine, was also synthesized by Gilman and Shirley (226). Pharmacologic and clinical studies were con-

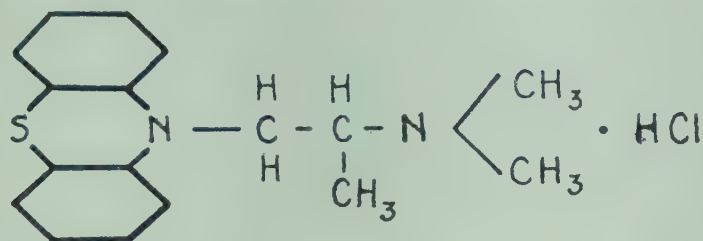


FIG. 8.—3277RP (Phenergan).

trasted with those of 3015RP by Halpern and co-workers (253, 257) and 3277RP was found to be a much more effective antihistamine.

*Pyribenzamine.*—The chemical description of N,N-dimethyl-N'-benzyl-N'-2-pyridyl-ethylenediamine was given by Huttner *et al.* (284) in 1946. Mayer and co-workers (383, 390) found that, experimentally, Pyribenzamine (tripelennamine) had more striking antihis-

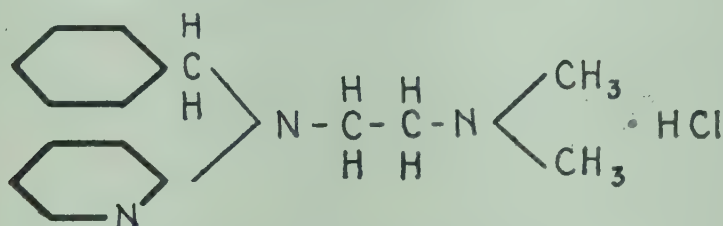


FIG. 9.—Pyribenzamine.

taminic properties than any of the previous preparations. Arbesman *et al.* (18) found it to have a definite effect on histamine and allergic whealing and on that due to passive transfer when taken orally by human subjects. In 1946 Feinberg (174) also reported on its clinical efficiency to the Council on Pharmacy and Chemistry of the American Medical Association.

*Histadyl (Thenylene).*—Weston (573) published an account of N,N-dimethyl-N'-2-pyridyl-N'-2-thenyl-ethylenediamine at about the same time it was reported independently by Clapp *et al.* (86) and Ercoli *et al.* (159) in other laboratories. Its effectiveness as an antihista-

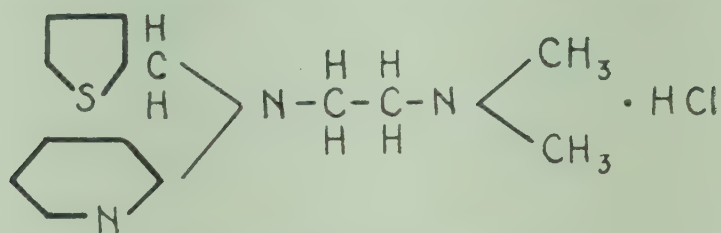


FIG. 10.—Histadyl (Thenylene).

mine, established by animal experiments, was indicated by Roth *et al.* (469), Ercoli *et al.* (159), Litchfield *et al.* (345) and Lee *et al.* (327). Lee, Dinwiddie and Chen (327) used this drug in hay fever patients and noted that in "a majority" symptoms were alleviated.

*Chlorothen (Tagathen).*—This chlorine analogue, N,N-dimethyl-N'-2-pyridyl-N'-5-chloro-2-thenyl-ethylenediamine, was also reported by Clapp *et al.* (86).

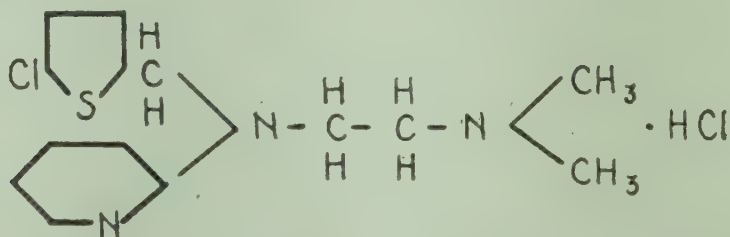


FIG. 11.—Chlorothen (Tagathen).

Litchfield and co-workers (345) investigated the pharmacologic properties and claimed that, compared with Pyribenzamine, chlorothen showed increased antihistamine activity and decreased toxicity. Clinically, we



(176) noted an incidence of 70 per cent effectiveness during the 1947 ragweed and mold season.

*Diatrin*.—This drug, N,N-dimethyl-N'-phenyl-N'-(2-thienylmethyl)-ethylenediamine, is the phenyl analogue of Histadyl. Leonard and Solmssen (332) synthesized this compound and Kyrides *et al.* (314) indicated that

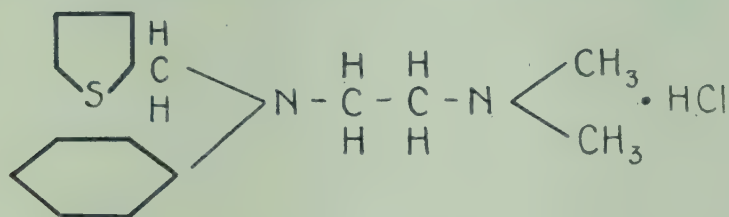


FIG. 12.—Diatrin.

it was an effective antihistamine and antianaphylactic compound, its effectiveness being somewhat less than that of Pyribenzamine and only about two-thirds that of Antergan. Our own limited clinical results show it to be moderately effective.

*Neohetramine*.—This drug was synthesized in the laboratories of the Nepera Chemical Company, and

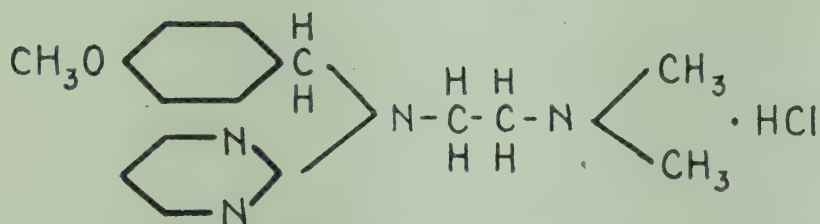


FIG. 13.—Neohetramine.

Reinhard and Scudi (437) reported on the antihistaminic, antianaphylactic and toxic properties. This compound is N,N-dimethyl-N'-2-pyrimidyl-N'-p-methoxybenzyl-ethylenediamine. Bernstein and Feinberg (32)

furthered the pharmacologic studies and found that clinically it was moderately effective only in high doses. The incidence and degree of the side reactions were less than those with most other antihistaminic drugs.

*Pyrrolazote*.—Closely related to 3015RP, this compound, 10-( $\beta$ -pyrrolidinoethyl)-phenothiazine, was synthesized by Reid and co-workers (436). The pharmacology of this compound was studied by Vander Brook

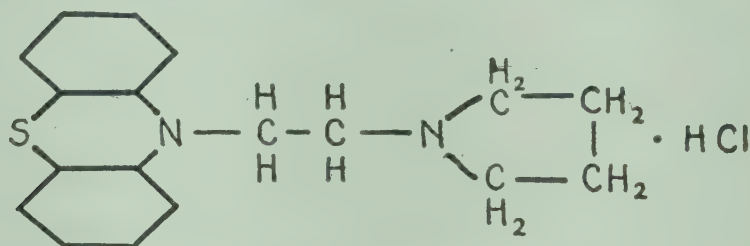


FIG. 14.—Pyrrolazote.

*et al.* (552), who found it as effective as Pyribenzamine in antagonizing the action of histamine in animals and decidedly less toxic. Clinically, this drug was tested by us and found to have good clinical potency, giving symptomatic relief in 63 per cent of hay fever patients.

194B (*White*).—This drug, N,N-dimethyl-N'-2-thiazolyl-N'-p-methoxybenzyl-ethylenediamine, was de-

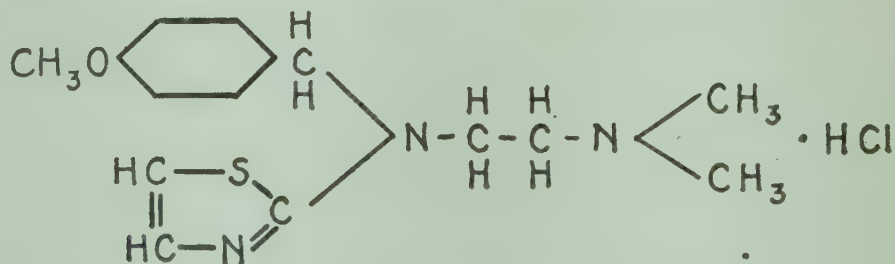


FIG. 15.—194B (White).

scribed by Sondern and Breivogel (509). Pharmacologically, it was found to be a relatively potent antihistamine



(187) and, clinically, we (33) found it moderately effective but useful because of the low incidence and degree of sedation.

*p*-Fluorobenzyl-DPE (Lederle).—This compound, the fluorine derivative of Pyribenzamine, was synthesized by Vaughan and co-workers (554) and is known chemically as N,N-dimethyl-N'-*p*-fluorobenzyl-N'-2-pyridyl-ethylenediamine. Litchfield *et al.* (346), as well as

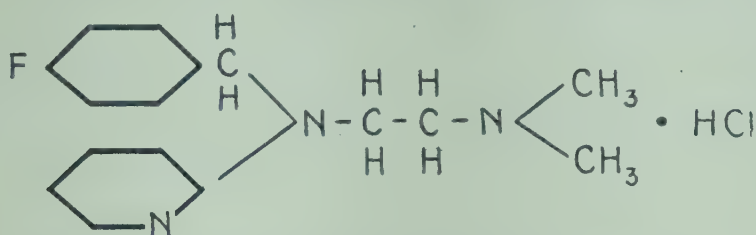


FIG. 16.—*p*-Fluorobenzyl-DPE (Lederle).

Vaughan (554), reported on its antihistaminic properties and found it to be more effective than Pyribenzamine. For clinical results we again have to turn to our own (178) limited experience. The drug has been found as effective in 30 mg. doses as most antihistamines in 50 mg. doses.

*Thenfadol*.—The synthesis of this compound, N,N-dimethyl-N'-2-pyridyl-N'-3-thenyl-ethylenediamine, was

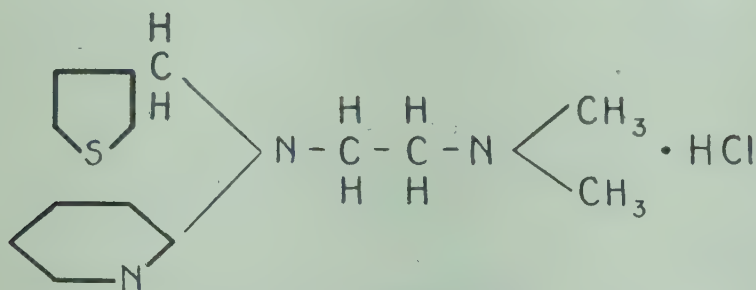


FIG. 17.—Thenfadol.

reported by Campaigne and LeSuer (72). The pharmacologic properties were investigated by Lands *et al.*

(321), who found it to be a highly active antagonist of histamine of about the same order as Pyribenzamine. It did not appear to be significantly more toxic than the other structurally similar compounds (274, 321). No published data are available on the clinical efficacy of this drug.

### ETHANOLAMINE DERIVATIVES

929F.—This is the parent instigator of the antihistamines, known as 2-isopropyl-5-methylphenoxyethyldiethylamine (thymoxyethyldiethylamine). It was first

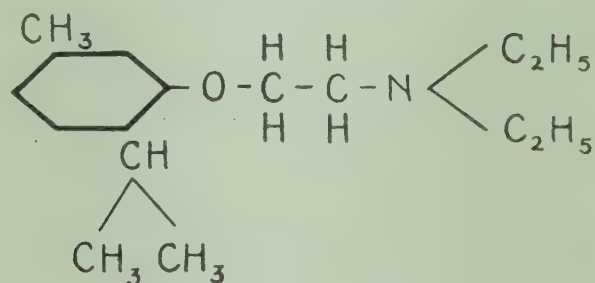


FIG. 18.—929F.

synthesized by Einhorn and Rotlauf (148) in 1911 and was among those which Fourneau and Bovet (195, 196) studied in their researches for new antimalarials. Although having some antihistaminic activity (517), its toxicity for both animals and man precluded clinical use.

*Benadryl*.—Rieveschl and Huber (445) synthesized  $\beta$ -dimethylaminoethylbenzohydryl ether (diphenhydramine) in 1945, thus making it the first antihistamine prepared in this country. Rieveschl, in addition, presented pharmacologic data on Benadryl before the 1945 A.A.A.S. Symposium at Gibson Island, Maryland. Wells and Morris (568), Ellis (152) and Loew, Kaiser and



Moore (351) presented studies before the Federation of American Societies for Experimental Biology in 1945. These data and those of Wells *et al.* (569) and others indicated the effectiveness of Benadryl in antagonizing

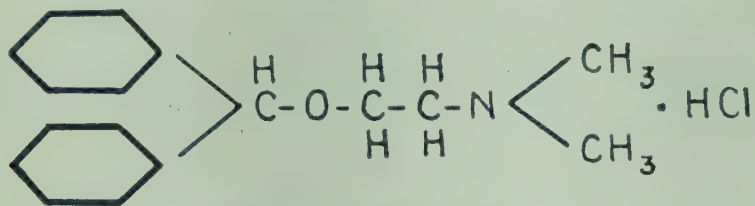


FIG. 19.—Benadryl.

the effects of histamine in experimental animals. The clinical efficiency of the drug was discussed in a symposium (392) on Benadryl and in articles such as that of McGavack *et al.* (366) wherein it was reported to be effective for many allergic conditions.

*Decapryn.*—Sperber and co-workers (512) synthesized this compound which can be known chemically as  $\alpha$ -dimethylaminoethoxy -  $\alpha$  - 2 - pyridyl-ethyl-benzene.

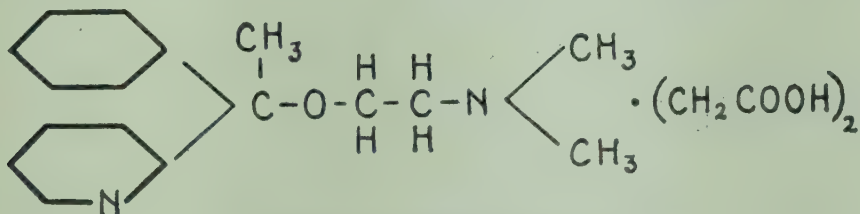


FIG. 20.—Decapryn.

Brown and Werner (61, 62) studied the pharmacologic and antihistamine properties of this drug. Clinically, it was shown to be effective in treating hay fever, although it has a decided sedative effect (183).

### MONAMINES

*Trimeton.*—Although the synthesis of this compound, 1-phenyl-1-(2-pyridyl)-3-dimethylaminopro-

pane, has not yet been published by Schering in whose laboratories it was prepared, LaBelle and Tislow (317)

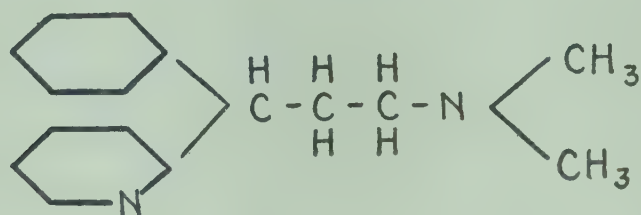


FIG. 21.—Trimeton.

described its potency, toxicity and pharmacologic properties, including its antihistamine efficiency. Brown (63) found it to be clinically effective.

*Chlor-Trimeton*.—Also synthesized by Schering, this chlorine derivative of Trimeton, called 1-p-chlorophenyl-1-(2-pyridyl)-3-dimethylaminopropane, was found to be an effective antihistamine (538). Halogenation of the benzene ring in Trimeton increased the

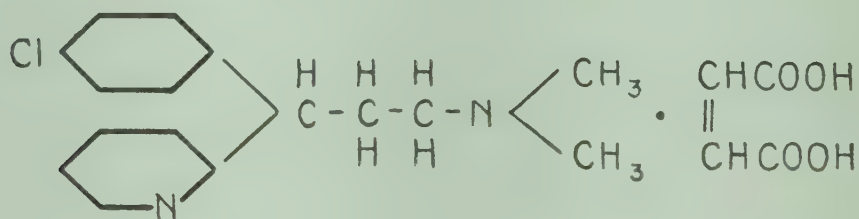


FIG. 22.—Chlor-Trimeton.

"therapeutic index" in animals from four to 50 (Pyribenzamine = 1) without apparent change in toxicity, according to Tislow *et al.* (538). Our clinical experiences and those of Eisenstadt (149) in a published report indicated that the drug is clinically effective in



small doses but that with larger doses the same objections are found as with the other antihistamines.

### MISCELLANEOUS COMPOUNDS

*Antistine*.—Meier and Bucher (393) reported the early pharmacologic, including antihistaminic, studies on this compound, 2-(N-benzylanilinomethyl)-imidazo-

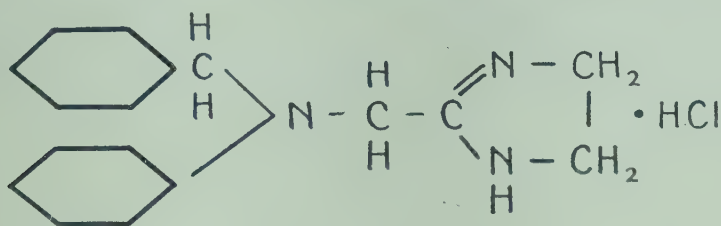


FIG. 23.—Antistine.

line, the synthesis of which was carried out at Ciba, Switzerland. Antistine possesses the usual antihistaminic effects, but our clinical experience indicates that it is one of the less potent of the available drugs.

*Thephorin*.—Wenner and Plati of the Hoffmann-LaRoche laboratories prepared this compound, 2-methyl-

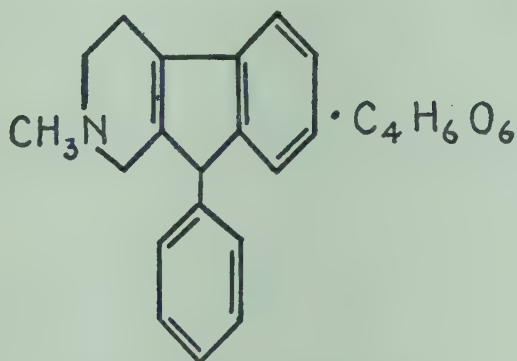


FIG. 24.—Thephorin.

9-phenyl-2,3,4,9-tetrahydro-1-pyridindene. Lehmann (330), who determined its pharmacologic properties, found it had greater potency than Benadryl but less than

Pyribenzamine in protecting guinea pigs against histamine. Thephorin was found to be effective in allergic and other dermatoses by Kesten and Sheard (309), and Crip and Aaron (109) indicated that it was moderately effective in nasal allergy.

*Chlorcyclizine* (*Di-Paralene*, *Perazil*).—This drug, N-(p-chlorobenzhydryl)-N'-methyl-piperazine, was synthesized almost simultaneously by Abbott Laboratories and Burroughs Wellcome. The pharmacologic studies

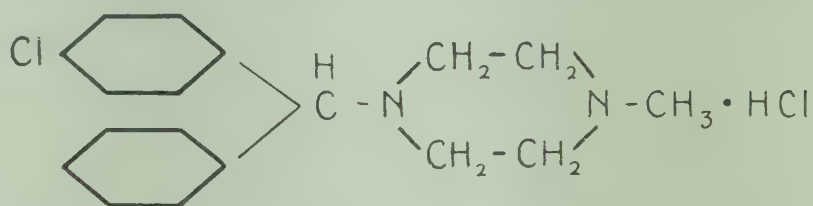


FIG. 25.—Chlorcyclizine (*Di-Paralene*, *Perazil*).

from these laboratories (79, 470) indicated that it was an effective antihistamine. Our (179) clinical studies have shown that its chief advantage is the tendency to prolonged action.

#### DISTRIBUTION AND METABOLISM

Relatively little work has appeared on the distribution of the antihistamines in the tissues following administration and subsequent metabolism. Early in the history of the antihistamines, Gelvin and McGavack (225) found that the concentration of Benadryl in the cerebrospinal fluid was comparable to that in the blood after from 18 to 36 days of treatment with from 100 to 400 mg. daily. Their method of determination, however, was nonspecific and was one used to identify organic



bases. Using essentially a similar method, Glazko and co-workers (228–230) followed the course of injected Benadryl in animals. They found that after a subcutaneous injection the highest concentration was in the lung, followed by the spleen, kidney, brain, liver and muscle. The concentration reached a peak in about one hour and fell rapidly to normal within six hours. A small amount of unaltered Benadryl, as well as nonbasic metabolic products, determined by radioactive assay technics, was found in the urine. The liver was indicated as the chief site of degradation.

Snyder *et al.* (508) indicated that in rats 7–36 per cent of intravenously or orally administered Decapryn was excreted in the urine within 24 hours. No Decapryn was subsequently found in the tissues. The drug was identified by the ultraviolet absorption wave, antihistaminic effects and isolation as the hydrochloride or reineckate.

Pyribenzamine was found by Way and Dailey (559) to be rapidly and completely absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract of the rat within four hours. Highest concentrations were present in the lungs, with high concentrations found also in the liver, kidneys and spleen. This tissue Pyribenzamine was no longer detectable after 24 hours. The appreciably high concentration found in the brain was thought to be a possible explanation of the toxic effects of the drug. Using 50–100 mg. oral doses, Way and Dailey observed that less than 1 per cent was excreted in the urine in human subjects after 15–24 hours. Following alkaline hydrolysis of the urine, an eightfold increase was found, substantiating Perlman's

(421) observation that about 10 per cent of antihistamine drugs is excreted in a conjugate form. The liver was also found to be important in the metabolism of Pyribenzamine.

### DETECTION AND DETERMINATION

Methods for the detection and quantitative determination of the antihistaminic drugs have suffered because of the nonspecificity of the reaction. For this reason, the technics described essentially deal with the pure, isolated drugs and describe color reactions or crystal formation. Thus, Keenan (303) has described the crystals of the chlorplatinate of Benadryl and Pyribenzamine. Haley and his associates (239, 242-245, 303) in a lengthy series, have described the reactions of virtually all the antihistamines with the common alkaloidal, colorimetric and precipitation reagents. Although they find that certain of the color reactions can be used as a means of differentiation for some of the antihistamines, the best procedure seems to be optical crystallographic methods.

Traub, Friedemann and Landstadt (540) suggested that the suppression of the action of a given concentration of histamine on the skin capillaries of the rabbit could be utilized as a quantitative means of assaying the histamine antagonists. A spectrophotometric assay method was applied to pyranisamine maleate by Anderson and co-workers (11) who indicated that this technic could be applied to elixirs, tablets, parenteral solutions and the like. Benadryl was quantitated by Dill and Glazko (131) from an ethylenedichloride extract



by the methyl orange technic used for organic bases. Pyridine-containing antihistamines were quantitated by Perlman (421) and Jones and Brady (290), utilizing the development of a fluorescing substance found by the actions of cyanogen bromide on the antihistamine. Perlman, estimating the reaction products in the fluorophotometer, noted about 10 per cent recovery of the drugs in a conjugated form in the urine, whereas Jones and Brady, by colorimetric estimation, indicated that more than 85 per cent of an administered dose of Pyribenzamine could be recovered. The results of Perlman are more in keeping with those reported by Way and Dailey (559).



## CHAPTER 3

# The Pharmacology of the Antihistamines

### PHARMACOLOGY OF HISTAMINE

IT APPEARS RELEVANT to present a short survey of the physiology of histamine before entering into a discourse of the agents which negate or alter many of its actions. The chief pharmacologic actions of histamine on the body involve the cardiovascular, respiratory, gastrointestinal and urogenital systems. The response produced by these systems is due chiefly to changes in contractility of the smooth muscle constituents of the tissues comprising the systems. Certain effects are due to stimulation of various glands of external secretion. Still other effects are the result of changes in the permeability of capillaries.

*Cardiovascular system.*—Histamine is a powerful dilator of capillaries, an action which is direct on the contractile mechanism, independent of innervation and uninfluenced by blocking drugs such as atropine. Large doses are followed by a precipitous fall in pressure which



may be pronounced and persistent, if not fatal, partly because there is a striking increase in vessel wall permeability, so that there is a loss of plasma protein and fluid into the extracellular areas, and because there is stagnation of blood within the vastly enlarged capillary bed. In the skin, these cause a rise in the surface temperature and a reddening. The intradermal injection results in a local reaction, similar to the triple response of various types of cutaneous stimuli and characterized by (1) a local red area resulting from direct contact of the capillaries with the drug, (2) a diffuse flare due to dilatation of surrounding arterioles by local axon reflexes and (3) ultimately a wheal or area of edema due to transudation of fluid by virtue of the increased permeability.

Excised arteries are constricted by histamine in most species. Pulmonary vessels are constricted in lung sections and apparently even in intact animals, for the pressure in the pulmonary artery rises and the volume of the lung diminishes even when the pressure in the systemic arteries is unchanged.

Abramson and Engel (5) have stressed the activity of the minute cutaneous lymphatics of man in the mechanism of the spread of histamine wheals, which form not so much by diffusion of histamine through the tissues as by the convection of it by the minute lymphatics. At some distance from the original injection site, histamine escapes from the lymphatics into the tissues to act on the blood vessels. Some of it may be taken up again into the lymph stream and transported a little farther through these channels, to escape once more

and act on the tissues at a still more distant site.

Moderate amounts of histamine have little or no effect on the heart. In man, continuous infusion of histamine at a rate of 0.02–0.04 mg. per minute usually produces an increase in heart rate and cardiac output which is due to compensatory reflex responses and not to direct cardiac stimulation. Essex and co-workers (161) have reported that the drug invariably increases the rate of coronary blood flow. Electrocardiographic changes which may be seen are often the result of high toxic concentrations weakening the muscle and producing conduction disturbances. There is usually no clinical or electrocardiographic evidence of permanent cardiac damage.

*Digestive system.*—Histamine has a stimulating action on the musculature of the gastrointestinal tract of most animals, the rabbit being a notable exception. In unanesthetized dogs and cats the intestinal tonus is greatly increased. In most anesthetized animals intravenous injection usually causes marked stimulation, which is diminished but not abolished by atropine.

Histamine is the most potent known excitant of gastric secretion. This action is independent of innervation, and amounts which have little or no effect on blood pressure are effective.

Histamine also has a slight stimulating action on salivary, pancreatic, intestinal and lacrimal secretions, but the action is relatively brief in duration and the mechanism is unknown.

*Uterus.*—One of the most characteristic actions of histamine is the powerful contraction of the isolated or



intact uterus. This effect on the excised guinea pig uterus can be detected in a dilution of 1:150,000,000. The uteri of cats and rabbits are less sensitive, and the uterus of the rat is relaxed. The stimulating action seems to be a direct one in the myometrium since it occurs in denervated tissues.

*Lungs.*—Histamine is a powerful activator of bronchiolar musculature. The action is independent of nerves and is usually unaltered by atropine. Sensitivity reactions vary with the species of animal. Death by asphyxiation, chiefly as a result of bronchiolar constriction, may occur in guinea pigs with doses as small as 0.1 mg. The violent dyspnea is only partly caused by obstruction of the bronchioles through spasm of the muscles; congestion and edema of the mucosa also play an important part. The bronchiolar spasm is antagonized by epinephrine and atropine.

*Miscellaneous effects.*—These effects include activation of the excised ureter, dilatation of the pupil in dogs and cats and constriction in the rabbit, decrease in urine formation, variable effects on the cerebrospinal fluid pressure, etc.

### PHARMACODYNAMICS OF ANTIHISTAMINES

Interest in antihistaminic drugs is related to their use as (1) pharmacologic tools for differentiating between the effects of histamine and those due to other agents, (2) therapeutic agents to alleviate symptoms due to histamine and (3) diagnostic agents to aid in proving or disproving that symptomatology is referable to histamine or to other causes (348). The use of the anti-

histamines in elucidating these numerous problems obviously requires an adequate knowledge of their pharmacologic and toxicologic properties, mode of action, degree of specificity and, in the absence of absolute specificity, a due consideration of other than antihistaminic action. The following, then, is a somewhat detailed discussion of pharmacologic action and toxicity.

Doses of antihistaminic compounds commonly used in animals do not exert a decided effect on respiration, and the clinical literature contains no indication that doses recommended for therapeutic use in man have any effect on respiration (174, 365). An increased rate and amplitude of respiration followed intravenous administration of some of the drugs in anesthetized animals, and the persistence, in general, was concurrent with a normal or slightly increased level of arterial blood pressure. Respiratory stimulation has also been noticed in unanesthetized animals after large oral or parenteral doses of antihistamines (247, 348, 389). Such stimulation usually preceded or was concomitant with pronounced excitability, tremors and convulsions.

Hypotension may result from rapid intravenous injection of the antihistamines. Hypotension, however, was minor in degree, absent or replaced by a slight hypertension which persisted for several minutes when these drugs were administered slowly or by other routes (247, 353, 502, 514, 569). The exact cause of the hypotension or hypertension has not been determined. Since the hypertension persisted for only a few minutes, it scarcely could be related to other actions of the drugs, such as antagonism of histamine which was demon-



strable for several hours. Doses of antihistamines which are therapeutically effective in allergic disease do not raise blood pressure (174, 224, 365). This indicates that the antihistaminic compounds lack the pressor properties possessed by epinephrine and its congeners.

Pyribenzamine usually produces a slight fall in the cerebrospinal fluid pressure (321). Antistine has no such effect.

The majority of antihistamines exert some local anesthetic action (247, 351). Local anesthetic action should be considered when interpreting effects of antihistaminic drugs on vascular and cutaneous responses in which axon and other reflexes are involved. Such action is possibly related to antipruritic effects and production of cutaneous analgesia about which more will be found in Chapters 7 and 8. Halpern (259, 260) made some attempt to quantitate the local anesthetic action and concluded that this action is not responsible for nor does it parallel the antihistaminic effects. Yonkman and co-workers (585) observed a loss of wink reflex in the rabbit following the local instillation of Antistine, and both this drug and Pyribenzamine produced anesthesia of the conjunctiva in man. Sheldon and his group (498), however, stated that Benadryl, Decapryn, Antistine and Pyribenzamine, in proper therapeutic doses, produced no apparent significant depression of the corneal reflex in rabbits when these drugs were given intravenously, orally or by ophthalmic application. Hyperesthesia could occur.

In animals, antihistamines do not induce sedation, hypnosis or depressant effects. Toxic doses of all antihis-

taminic drugs, with the exception of quarternary derivatives of Benadryl (576), rather stimulate the central nervous system, evidenced by hyperexcitability, tremors and convulsions. Neither excitation nor sedation is seen in smaller doses. For these reasons it occurred to Winter (578) that these drugs might show a potentiating effect on the sedative action of barbiturates and that by this means the sedative attributes of the antihistamines could be measured. Experiments on mice sedated with Evipal showed that the mean waking time was prolonged about 10 per cent by Pyribenzamine and Neo-Antergan and about 40 per cent by 3277RP and Benadryl. These results appear to be correlated with the reported incidence of sedation in man. In addition to the sedation which many of these compounds produce in man, dizziness sometimes follows administration of therapeutic doses. The sedation is unpredictable, variable in degree from person to person and constitutes a side effect which has been encountered frequently. It is discussed more completely in Chapters 9 and 10.

Untoward reactions in man which result from direct or indirect actions of antihistaminic drugs on the gastrointestinal tract include gastric distress, nausea, emesis, colic and diarrhea. Such reactions are less frequently encountered with Benadryl (162, 334) which usually exerts a slight degree of antispasmodic action. In fact, Benadryl was found to have an antiemetic effect in apomorphine-induced vomiting in dogs (82).

Antihistaminic drugs are absorbed rapidly following oral administration and parenteral injection. The usual experimental and therapeutic doses exert an antihista-



minic effect in animals and man for two to six hours. No information is available concerning effective blood levels. A discussion of the mode and rate of destruction or elimination appears in the preceding chapter.

### ANTAGONISM OF HISTAMINE

*Bronchioles.*—The usual procedure which has been adopted in the screening and evaluation of the antihistaminic drugs is to determine their ability to prevent the bronchoconstriction which is so conspicuous in guinea pigs exposed to histamine or during anaphylaxis. The method frequently used is that of Loew, Kaiser and Moore (351) which, essentially, is a modification of that used by Kallos and Pagel (295) and others (247). It consists of determining the minimum effective dose of a given drug which significantly reduces the mortality rate of guinea pigs exposed to a lethal dose of an atomized histamine solution. The advantage of this technic is that a set of conditions can be sufficiently standardized to yield a degree of consistency in the incidence of asphyxial deaths referable to histamine-induced bronchoconstriction in untreated guinea pigs, thereby permitting a fairly reliable index of the minimum effective dose. With previous methods a reliable comparison of the relative effectiveness of various drugs could not be made, since various investigators used different technics and often failed to include a standard or reference compound.

By such a technic virtually all the antihistamines used clinically were shown to possess an action antagonistic to histamine aerosol in that they either prevented or di-

minished the degree of bronchoconstriction. And, too, by this technic experimental compounds were screened for their antihistaminic capacities. Thus, the early reports (51, 514, 517) that 929F and 1571F could diminish the bronchoconstrictive effects of histamine in guinea pigs were confirmed by other investigators (247, 351, 352, 465, 574). Antergan (247, 248) and 2325RP were shown to be more effective. In rapid succession, the drugs with which we are now familiar clinically were found to be capable of diminishing the action of histamine. Although by no means complete, the following listing gives some of the early experiences with each drug: Neo-Antergan (49), Benadryl and related compounds (351, 352, 353, 502), Pyribenzamine (383, 390), Antistine (393), Hetramine (190), 3015RP and 3227RP (Phenergan) (253, 257), Histadyl (Thenylene) (159, 327, 345, 469), chlorothen (Tagathen) (345), Diatrin (314), Neohetramine (32, 437), Pyrrolazote (552), Decapryn (61, 62), Trimeton (317), Thephorin (330), p-fluorobenzyl-DPE (346, 554), Chlor-Trimeton (538), chlorcyclizine (Di-Paralene, Perazil) (79, 470), Thenfadil (321) and 194B (White) (187). In addition to the effectiveness of these drugs on the bronchospasm produced by histamine aerosol, each of them was capable of antagonizing the constriction induced by intravenous injection of histamine.

Despite the apparent constancy of results of the aerosol technic it becomes obvious that any attempt to compare the effectiveness of different drugs suffers partly because of individual variation in technic and individual variation of different investigators. Then, too, most in-



investigators have been satisfied with a comparison of their compound with one or two others (206, 502, 577). In order to assess the relative potency of the antihistamines on some comparative basis, we realized the necessity for a comparative evaluation of the compounds with the same technics and in the hands of one group of investigators. In assessing the potency of a long series of antihistamines, Feinberg *et al.* (187) used the following technic. Guinea pigs were injected with varying amounts of the compound intraperitoneally (usually 0.1 and 1.0 mg. per kg.) 30 minutes before the animals were subjected to histamine. Histamine was administered in two ways: (1) as an aerosol from a solution of a concentration of 0.5 mg. per ml. in terms of the free base and (2) intravenously with one MLD<sub>100</sub> (the minimum dose found 100 per cent fatal for a control series of guinea pigs). In another series of experiments, pretreatment with the antihistamine consisted in subjecting the animals for five minutes to an aerosol of the antihistamine, in varying concentrations, before exposure to histamine aerosol. The results showed that the various types of experiments were in agreement as to the degree of potency of a compound and that the potency of a given compound could be compared with that of another. Thus, for example, Antistine and Neohetramine showed not only a low effectiveness against histamine shock but also against the action of histamine aerosol. Such compounds as Pyribenzamine, Chlor-Trimeton, Neo-Antergan, Histadyl (Thenylene), Tagathen and p-fluorobenzyl-DPE displayed high effectiveness in all technics. It must be noted, however, that there was no absolute

parallelism between the findings for any two compounds with all technics.

We realize that some of our findings are in disagreement with those of other investigators, particularly with reference to histamine shock. These reports, such as those of Staub (514) and Brown and Werner (62), usually were based on the number of lethal doses of histamine against which the animals were protected after a larger dose of the antihistaminic compound. Nevertheless, our work and that of others (345, 577) indicates that a determination of the amount of the drug required to protect against one lethal dose of histamine approaches more closely the clinical potency of the drug than the findings obtained by the older methods.

Shock caused by histamine injected intravenously was prevented in guinea pigs by subcutaneous implantation of Pyribenzamine in beeswax (304). On removing the pellet, the animals responded to histamine in a manner similar to that of the controls.

*Intestinal muscle.*—Staub (514) reported that 929F and 1571F in a dilution of 1:2,000,000 to 1:10,000,000 prevented histamine from contracting isolated guinea pig ileum. Halpern (247) compared 1571F, 2325RP and Antergan for their antispasmodogenic action. The last drug was the most effective. Other direct comparisons of the antihistamine action of several drugs on intestinal muscle were made by Loew *et al.* (353), who found that the spasm induced with histamine diphosphate was reduced by 1571F and Benadryl, whereas antispasmodics such as atropine, Pavatrine and Trasentin were only effective in much lower concentrations. Histamine-in-



duced intestinal spasm was diminished by Antistine (393) and Neo-Antergan (502). Pyribenzamine in a dilution of 1:50,000,000 was sufficient to prevent the spasmogenic action of histamine (383). Virtually all the antihistamines which were subsequently synthesized showed the capacity to prevent this action of histamine, although not all the data are of a quantitative nature al-

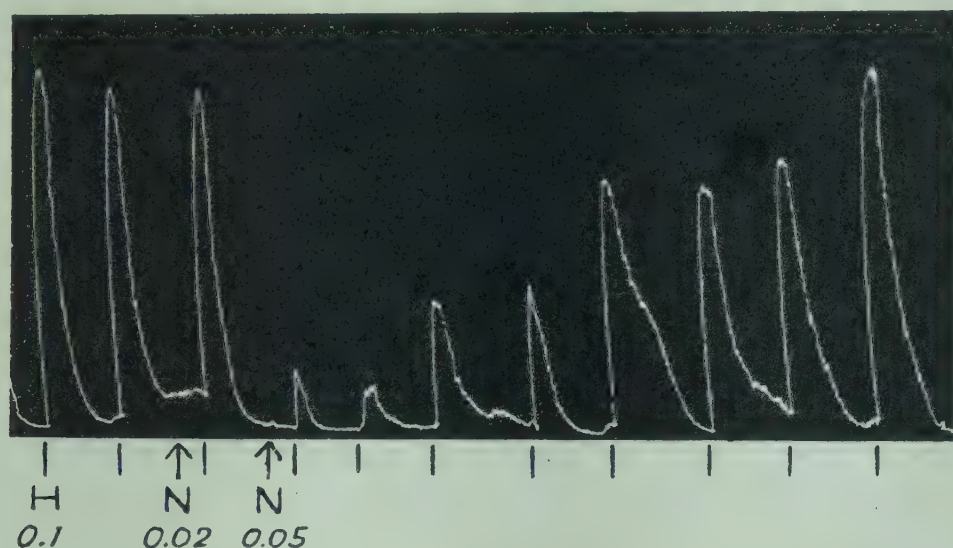


FIG. 26.—Action of an antihistamine, N, on guinea pig ileum. All doses indicated in micrograms, in bath volume of 20 ml. Unlabeled vertical lines are all 0.1  $\mu$ g. histamine (as base). N, Neo-Antergan.

lowing for comparisons (319). In evaluating a given antihistamine by this technic, Chen *et al.* (83) have stressed the need for making the comparison against a standard on the same ileal strip.

Suppression of the spasmogenic action of acetylcholine and barium was also accomplished by 929F and 1571F when sufficient doses were used (247, 353, 576). Halpern (247) found that several hundred times the concentration of 2325RP and Antergan was needed to

antagonize the spasmogenic action of acetylcholine and barium than was required for histamine antagonism. Pyribenzamine (383) and Neo-Antergan (129) weakly antagonized the spasmogenic action of acetylcholine.

The antihistamines, in general, show no striking anti-spasmodic action on isolated rabbit intestine, such as diminishing the tonus or the spontaneous motility. Data are available for 929F and 1571F (514), 2325RP (247), Neo-Antergan and Pyribenzamine (129, 502). Benadryl was found to decrease the tonus and motility of the rabbit intestine, whereas Neo-Antergan and Pyribenzamine stimulated intestinal and uterine activity when injected intravenously in anesthetized dogs (502). Most of the antihistamines, then, do not prevent spasm or exert a prominent relaxing effect on intestinal muscle except under conditions in which histamine has produced increased tonus, hypermotility or spasm.

*Uterine muscle.*—Limited data (129, 247, 383, 514) are available for some of the antihistamines which seem to indicate that probably all are capable of contracting uterine muscle and that all antagonize the oxytocic action of histamine.

*Arterial blood pressure.*—The depressor action of histamine in anesthetized dogs was found to be diminished by the antihistamines tested (48, 49, 353, 502, 568, 569, 583). These drugs appeared to possess equal potency with regard to antagonizing the depressor effects of identical doses of histamine in dogs even though their ability to antagonize the bronchoconstrictive action of histamine in guinea pigs varied widely. It is possible that quantitative data can be obtained by other technics



which may reveal differences in the potency of these drugs against this action of histamine.

The variable response of the cerebrospinal fluid pressure to histamine was antagonized by Pyribenzamine and Antistine (106).

*Capillary permeability and cutaneous reactions.*—Many diverse stimuli, such as thermal, chemical, mechanical, etc., can elicit an inflammatory reaction. The question of the participation of histamine in these reactions is important, because histamine has been implicated in the flare and wheal response of the local inflammatory reaction. The measurement of the cutaneous response to histamine per se and the effects of the antihistaminic drugs on these cutaneous reactions have been studied in a precise manner especially by us (358) and will be discussed in Chapter 5. The discussion in this section will therefore be restricted to nonquantitative, localized responses, not all of which are mediated by histamine release.

The extravasation of a dye, such as trypan blue, and its localized accumulation which usually follows the intradermal injection of histamine has been used as a measure of increased capillary permeability in animals. Benadryl (323), Neo-Antergan (323) and Pyribenzamine (439) were found to diminish or annul this effect. Benadryl (323) failed to affect the spread of the dye induced by other agents such as trypsin (571), snake venom, staphylococcus toxin, heparin, Pontocaine, codeine and horse serum in nonsensitized rabbits. Nontoxic doses of Pyribenzamine or Benadryl when dropped slowly on three-day chick embryos before or concomi-

tant with the administration of normal rabbit serum failed to prevent the vascular phenomenon (405). Rigdon (446) observed that prior injections of Thenylene or Pyrrolazote had no effect on the intensity of edema produced by the application of xylene to the skin of animals. The trypan blue concentration was also not altered. These data suggest that the action of the antihistamines on capillary permeability is limited to an antagonism of histamine and that the increase of permeability due to trypsin, toxins, serum, etc., is through a mechanism which does not involve histamine. Antihistamines probably diminish whealing by preventing histamine from increasing capillary permeability or by acting directly to decrease permeability (348). If the action is direct, the antihistaminic drugs should diminish increased capillary permeability caused by a variety of agents which do not contain or liberate histamine.

Haley and Harris (240) have explained the decrease in diffusion of trypan blue on the basis of the vasoconstrictor action of the antihistamines. These drugs not only negate the vasodilator action of histamine on the precapillary sphincters of the mammalian capillary bed but also have a vasoconstrictor effect. These authors also used this explanation to account for the reduction of the wheal and flare reactions in human beings as well as the tuberculin skin reaction. The latter question will be taken up in later chapters.

Allied to the vasoconstrictor action of the antihistamines is the observation of Halpern (251) that large doses caused the dissemination of localized infection in control animals, with the production of septic infec-



tions. Friedlaender and Feinberg (204) noted that the local application of Benadryl would reduce the wheal and flare response produced by a scratch test to codeine sulfate in man. However, Loew (348) has pointed out that a 5 per cent solution of Benadryl would exert local anesthetic action and thus affect axon reflexes concerned in flare reactions.

A novel and interesting approach to the measure of changes in capillary permeability was utilized by Bukantz and Dammin (68). Histamine injected intradermally into the skin of man and dogs increased the capillary permeability of intradermal fluorescein as measured under ultraviolet light by the dermofluorometer.

With respect to the use of the flare and wheal response to histamine and thereby its use in quantitation of antihistaminic drugs, Darsie and co-workers (120) pointed out that the proper selection of laboratory animals is of the utmost importance in dermatologic experiments involving a local skin reaction. For example, guinea pigs, rabbits and cats showed no whealing response to an intracutaneous injection of histamine, while dogs, monkeys and man gave positive results. In addition, when the concentration of histamine diphosphate was below 0.001 per cent the diameter of the wheal was no longer a reliable index of the action of histamine. The wheals produced by low concentrations of histamine showed greater variation in size than did those produced by the higher concentrations.

Because of the concept that histamine release is the cause of shock in burns, Gunnar and Weeks (237) investigated the effect of Pyribenzamine on the burn

shock. Large doses of Pyribenzamine given intravenously did not affect the onset and progression of the shock symptoms in rabbits. Sevitt (495) arrived at essentially the same conclusions with Benadryl, Antistine and Neo-Antergan in guinea pigs in that there was no alteration of any of the manifestations of the burn. Weeks and Gunnar (560) indicated that the erythema from burns and turpentine was reduced by Pyribenzamine but that neither the capillary permeability nor the microscopic picture of acute inflammation was altered.

Ingraham and Wiggers (285) failed to induce beneficial results in hemorrhagic shock in dogs by the use of Benadryl even though the antihistamines diminish the vasopressor action of histamine and its action of increasing capillary permeability. These authors suggested that the liberation of histamine may play no role in the production of the irreversible tissue damage of hemorrhagic shock.

*Glandular secretion.*—The antagonistic effect that the antihistamines display on the actions of histamine on the vascular system and on smooth muscle seems to indicate that such drugs might inhibit lacrimal, salivary, gastric and pancreatic secretion following stimulation of these glands with histamine.

Loew and Chickering (349) and Hallenbeck (246) found that in dogs the subcutaneous injection of 929F before a subcutaneous injection of histamine actually increased the volume and acidity of secretion over that which was obtained during control periods when only the histamine stimulus was used. The secretion may vary depending on the innervation; in dogs with denervated



Heidenhain gastric pouches, 1571F failed to modify secretion after a food stimulus (46) but in dogs with innervated pouches it inhibited secretion (246). When large single doses of histamine were employed neither drug inhibited secretion (69). The secretory inhibition demonstrated by 1571F was probably not referable to a specific antagonism of histamine since pilocarpine-induced secretion from denervated pouches was also inhibited (46).

Decourt, Rinieri and Sonnet (124) made the observation that in man 2786RP and 2339RP neither provoked gastric secretion nor were capable of suppressing the gastric effect of histamine. The failure of Benadryl to antagonize the secretagogue action of histamine in dogs with various types of pouches (211, 477) has been corroborated (105). Pyribenzamine also failed to antagonize this effect (477). The formation of duodenal and gastric ulcers in dogs which received large amounts of histamine in beeswax was not prevented either by Benadryl (211, 105) or by Tagathen (553).

The available evidence from human and animal experimentation seems to justify the conclusion that none of the antihistamines directly antagonizes the gastric secretagogue action of histamine. Thus, at least one of the prominent effects of histamine was not significantly diminished by the antihistaminic drugs.

Antergan and 2325RP given intravenously were found to augment salivary secretion, according to Halpern (247). Yonkman *et al.* (584) noted that, although the salivary secretion induced by carotid injections of histamine was highly variable, it appeared to

be diminished or annulled by Pyribenzamine. Lacrima-tion induced with histamine was stated to be definitely suppressed after Pyribenzamine injections. The meager, nonquantitative data which are available do not allow for an opinion concerning the secretagogue action of histamine on lacrimal, salivary and pancreatic glands. Loew (348) has indicated that since histamine-induced gastric secretion was not antagonized, it is possible that histamine acts on secretory cells through some mechanism which differs from that obtaining in endothelial and smooth muscle cells; or, the antihistamines either do not reach or have no affinity for the elements in the secretory cell which react to histamine.

#### MISCELLANEOUS ANTIHISTAMINIC EFFECTS

Closely akin to the alteration of capillary permeability by the antihistamines is the question of pulmonary edema produced by epinephrine. Halpern and co-workers (252, 255, 256) have stated that 3277RP injected prior to epinephrine prevented death due to pulmonary edema in all rabbits. Preceding this event there is an initial increase in blood pressure, apnea followed by rapid and difficult respiration, a subsequent fall in blood pressure and frothy blood expectoration. Although these authors realized that an injection of epinephrine in man liberates histamine in the plasma, they observed that Neo-Antergan afforded only partial protection against pulmonary edema while 3300RP, which is closely related to 3277RP, gave none. Neo-Antergan in the hands of Stone and Loew (523) failed to prevent epinephrine pulmonary edema in rabbits, and these authors as well



as Winter (579) observed no effect with Phenergan in rabbits, rats and guinea pigs.

Hyaluronidase is known to increase the spread of allergic epidermal reactions in the guinea pig sensitized to p-phenylenediamine (391). Pretreatment with Pyribenzamine almost completely suppressed the allergic reaction. Antistine as well as Pyribenzamine suppressed the spreading effect of hyaluronidase on subcutaneously injected India ink. Elster, Freeman and Lowry (153) noted that Pyribenzamine and Benadryl inhibited the hematocrit and fluid diffusion effects of intravenous hyaluronidase. They and Moynahan and Watson (402) indicated that the antihistamines had no effect on hyaluronidase in vitro. The compounds tested were Pyribenzamine, Neo-Antergan, Benadryl and Antistine.

In a series of rabbits in which orthostatic albuminuria was induced, Hamburger *et al.* (262) found that administration of 3277RP eliminated the albuminuria within 30 minutes. They believed that these results favor the concept that albuminuria of this type has to do with capillary permeability of the kidneys. Benadryl was shown by Chen and Clark (81) to have a hyperglycemic effect in rabbits which was in addition to that of epinephrine. Its effect is apparently due to central nervous system stimulation, since it could be inhibited by a depressant (pentobarbital). The simultaneous injection of Pyribenzamine or Antistine and histamine prevented the loosening of the upper layers of the epithelium of the excised bovine cornea (267).

Levitan and Scott (339) observed that Pyribenzamine and Antistine in relatively large doses inhibited the

development of ventricular fibrillation when epinephrine was given to dogs sensitized to chloroform. The effects were only of short duration and were inconstant. These authors (340) also found that neither Pyribenzamine nor Benadryl would prevent ventricular fibrillation and death resulting from the experimental occlusion of the circumflex branch of the left coronary artery. Emmelin and Muren (154) determined that the antihistamines would specifically antagonize the action of histamine on the adrenal medulla. Antergan, Benadryl, Neo-Antergan and Pyribenzamine when injected into the central stump of the celiac artery caused an output of epinephrine from the suprarenals.

Pyribenzamine inhibited the oxidation of glucose and pyruvate in the anaerobic glycolysis of glucose by mouse brain homogenates (278). The fact that the succinic oxidase and cytochrome oxidase systems were not affected was thought to suggest that the site of inhibition is between the pyridine nucleotides and the cytochrome systems. These effects may explain the hypnotic and local anesthetic action of Pyribenzamine. The antihistaminic drugs were found to have no antibacterial or bacteriostatic activity (60). Antihistamine medication caused an increase in mortality in guinea pigs exposed to x-ray (241).



## CHAPTER 4

# Antihistamines in Experimental Hypersensitivities

FOLLOWING DISCUSSION of the remarkable specific antagonistic properties of the antihistamines on histamine-induced bronchiolar constriction, intestinal and uterine contraction, cutaneous reactions and increased capillary permeability, etc., in the preceding chapter, our attention now turns to the effects of the antihistamines on experimental phenomena related to clinical allergy. Such a discussion will entail the effects of these drugs on immunologic processes, the end results of which, for the most part, stem from a concomitant release of histamine.

### ANAPHYLAXIS IN DIFFERENT SPECIES

We have already seen that the symptoms and reactions to histamine are nearly identical to those occurring in anaphylaxis. The reactions to histamine differ from one species to another because different shock organs or tissues give rise to the dominant reaction. Correspondingly, the anaphylactic reactions differ from species to species,

but in a given species they are always strikingly similar to histamine reactions.

Thus, in the guinea pig, the most commonly used experimental animal in the study of anaphylaxis, the most characteristic signs and symptoms are those associated with the respiratory tract. Distress appears rapidly: "The hair on the head and back of the neck begins to ruffle. The animal becomes restless, coughs and retches, rubs its nose, and seems to choke. The respirations which were at first increased in frequency become slower and labored and soon the animal is gasping for breath and making tremendous inspiratory efforts. The mucous membranes become cyanotic. The animal defecates and urinates. If the anaphylactic shock is destined to end fatally the animal soon becomes weak and rolls over on its side, gives a few convulsive kicks, gasps and stops breathing" (487). This cycle may be over in five minutes in very severe shock. If the shock is less severe, shivering sets in, followed by recovery and gradual improvement. The blood pressure which rises at first gradually falls in about 10 minutes. Asphyxia is the immediate cause of death. The lungs are markedly inflated owing to constriction of the bronchial musculature. Small hemorrhages are common on the under side of the diaphragm and in the viscera.

Death due to anaphylaxis is not so common in the rabbit, but when it occurs it is usually rapid. The animal will lie with legs outstretched or will fall on its side, give a series of convulsive movements and die. The blood pressure and body temperature fall. Pathologically, the pulmonary dilatation found in the guinea pig is absent



and there are no prominent hemorrhages in the splanchnic area, although some congestion of the liver and other viscera may be found. The most characteristic finding is the extreme dilatation of the right side of the heart and the inferior vena cava with blood, apparently caused by constriction of the pulmonary arteries.

In the dog vomiting is so characteristic and severe with profound anaphylaxis that it may be taken as a criterion. The vomitus is frothy and mixed with bile; sometimes it is fecal and sometimes, in severest cases, mixed with blood. There is diarrhea mixed with blood. Respiration is quickened and dyspneic; the arterial blood pressure is very low and the heart beat is weak and rapid. The general condition is serious enough for one to believe death imminent, but in reality death in less than two hours is extremely rare. In the dog the liver is greatly congested during shock and most of the observed symptoms are referable to the liver. The intense congestion has been explained on the basis of injury to the liver sinusoids and liver cells, allowing transudation of fluid, edema and congestion with red cells and obstruction of the hepatic veins, producing interference with the outflow of blood.

Anaphylactic shock is a less stormy event in the mouse. According to McMaster and Kruse (372), soon after the shocking dose is administered a blanching occurs in the ears and feet. This appears regularly and before the reported cyanosis. Agitation and hyperexcitability also are early signs. Later the animals scratch themselves, the hair becomes ruffled, respirations become difficult and brief, intermittent convulsions appear. There

is often a froglike posture, with the hind legs extended behind the body (563). Death occurs only after 15–60 minutes, at times after many hours. The lungs show moderate emphysema and the intestine and stomach are congested and hemorrhagic.

#### PREVENTION OF ANAPHYLACTIC SHOCK

Since histamine is significantly involved in anaphylaxis, the antihistaminic drugs would be expected to be effective in diminishing the anaphylactic reactions in each species. Numerous reports have appeared which indicate that those antihistamines which effectively antagonize the bronchoconstrictive action of histamine are capable of diminishing the severity of anaphylaxis in the guinea pig, in which animal bronchoconstriction is the prominent feature of anaphylaxis. Thus, following the report (195) that certain phenolic ethers had the property of inhibiting or counteracting the action of histamine, Staub and Bovet (517) found that the compound designated as 929F (2-isopropyl-5-methylphenoxyethyl-diethylamine), had definite antianaphylactic properties since it protected actively sensitized guinea pigs against a shocking dose of horse serum. Staub (514, 516) and others (465) confirmed this effect. Historically, the next drug studied was 1571F (N,N-diethyl-N'-phenyl-N'-ethyl-ethylenediamine) and it, too, was found to possess antihistaminic and antianaphylactic properties (247, 514, 516, 574).

Following these, there were described the antianaphylactic properties of Antergan (247, 344) and 2325RP (N'-phenyl-N'-ethyl-N-dimethylethylenedi-



amine (247). Bovet, Horclois and Walthert (49) discussed 2786RP or Neo-Antergan and established its value as an antianaphylactic agent. Many reports (18, 378, 383, 390, 584) on the inhibition by Pyribenzamine of the anaphylactic reaction in actively sensitized guinea pigs have appeared. Mayer (383) reported that 0.5–1.0 mg. per kg. of this drug was sufficient to prevent anaphylaxis. Comparative studies (206, 462) showed that no wide variation in antianaphylactic activity existed between Antergan, Neo-Antergan, Benadryl and Pyribenzamine comparable to their effect on histamine shock. Protection of guinea pigs against immediate anaphylaxis was effected by exposure for three minutes to a 2 per cent solution of Pyribenzamine given by aerosol (387). Delayed anaphylaxis could be prevented in some animals by longer exposures, such as one of 10 minutes.

Antistine was found to be effective against anaphylaxis in actively sensitized guinea pigs (393, 507) and Hetramine protected against horse serum shock (190). Neohetramine was investigated by Reinhard and Scudi (437), who found it as effective as Pyribenzamine in protecting against anaphylactic shock in actively sensitized guinea pigs, but Bernstein and Feinberg (32) noted that it required 10–20 mg. per kg. to give 70 per cent protection, whereas the Friedlaenders (207) showed that the same amount of protection was afforded by 3 mg. per kg. Halpern (249, 250) reported on a series of compounds with a thiodiphenylamine nucleus, including 3015RP and 3277RP (Phenergan), and he found that 0.1 mg. per kg. of the latter was sufficient to protect guinea pigs against fatal anaphylactic

shock. It was noted that Thephorin had greater efficiency in antagonizing histamine shock than active anaphylactic shock (330). Thenylene was found to alleviate active anaphylaxis in horse-serum-sensitive guinea pigs (468) and the same effect was reported for Diatrin (158). Treatment with 3 mg. per kg. chlorcyclizine prevented anaphylactic death when given one hour before the shocking dose (179). In a comparative study, Landau, Marriott and Gay (320) noted that larger doses of drug, about 3 mg., were required to protect guinea pigs against active anaphylactic death than were required for protection against histamine shock and that the various compounds tested (Antistine, Benadryl, bromothen, chlorothen, Histadyl, Pyribenzamine and Neo-Antergan) were almost equal in protective action, except for Antistine.

The rather extensive comparative evaluation by Feinberg, Malkiel, Bernstein and Hargis (187) included the effect of the antihistamines on active anaphylactic shock in the guinea pig. Twenty-four drugs were tested for antianaphylactic activity. Phenergan, 3015RP, Thenylene (Histadyl), Decapryn, 01780 (Lilly) and Perazil (Di-Paralene) were of about equal effectiveness, in that 3 mg. per kg. completely prevented shock. Benadryl, Pyribenzamine, Neo-Antergan, C5581-H (Bristol), 01003 (Lilly), Thephorin and Trimeton were of the same potency, 3 mg. per kg. protecting about seven out of 10 animals. Chlor-Trimeton was slightly more adequate. Decreasingly effective were Tagathen, bromothen, 194B (White) and 47-83 (Burroughs Wellcome) followed by Antistine, Hetramine, Neohetramine



and p-fluorobenzyl-DPE (Lederle). Orthoxine showed no protection in doses of 60 mg. per kg. It should again be noted that these results are applicable only to this series and type of experiments and do not have to be comparable with those of other technics.

As has been previously observed, greater amounts of the antihistamines are required for protection against anaphylactic shock than for protection against histamine shock. The advantage of a comprehensive series of experiments, all conducted with the same technic, is that it enables comparisons to be made. In particular, it is more difficult to evaluate and compare antihistamines by the modification of the anaphylactic reaction, for, compared with histamine assays, it is more difficult to obtain a  $MLD_{50}$  or  $MLD_{100}$  for an antigen. Consequently, the shocking dose is usually an unknown multiple of the MLD, depending on the sensitivity of the test animal. Thus, quantitation cannot be rigidly controlled and the drugs can only be compared for approximate relative potency. However, a comprehensive series tends to minimize the variable factors which include mode of sensitization, length of incubation period, individual animal variation and the like. Evidence of these difficulties is found in the report by Campbell *et al.* (74) of the failure of Benadryl to protect actively sensitized guinea pigs against a challenging dose of the antigen, egg white, administered intraperitoneally. The authors used this evidence to indicate that a substance other than histamine is responsible for anaphylactic shock. Control animals were killed by the antigen.

The antihistamines likewise protect guinea pigs pas-

sively sensitized. Loew and Kaiser (350) investigated a series of benzhydryl alkamine ethers by this technic and found that Benadryl was highly effective. Friedlaender *et al.* (205) found no difference in the effectiveness of Benadryl and Pyribenzamine. Neohetramine, however, was less effective; with doses of 5 mg. per kg. survival was only 60 per cent, compared with 100 per cent survival when Pyribenzamine was given in doses of 1 mg. per kg. (486). Decapryn (61) and AH289 (chlorcyclizine) (470) also altered anaphylactic shock in passively sensitized guinea pigs. Pyribenzamine and Neohetramine were found to have but little protective action in reversed anaphylaxis in the guinea pig in which the shocking antigen was rabbit serum immunized to guinea pig serum (19). The nature of this shock makes it acutely fatal, but the authors stated that some degree of protection could be attained with "weaker" serums.

Antihistamines show varying results in modifying the anaphylactic response in animals other than guinea pigs. Halpern (247) indicated that Antergan, 1571F and 2325RP prevented fatal anaphylactic shock in sensitized dogs. Pyribenzamine (383) and Benadryl (570) were also effective. Mayer and Brousseau (386) reported that 25 mg. per kg. of Pyribenzamine decreased the mortality rate of actively sensitized mice from 89 per cent for the unprotected to 42 per cent for the protected. On the other hand, Decapryn (61) in amounts as high as 175 mg. per kg. had no effect on active anaphylaxis. Antihistaminic drugs had but little effect on shock reactions of actively sensitized fish (141).

The antianaphylactic activity of the antihistamines



has also been demonstrated by *in vitro* experiments. Thus, Halpern (247) demonstrated that Antergan, 1571F and 2325RP would prevent contraction of the sensitized guinea pig ileum by the specific antigen. In addition, Wilcox and Seegal (574) noted that in a perfused sensitized guinea pig heart, 1571F prevented the diminution in coronary flow caused by the antigen. Increased heart rate and amplitude were not prevented. The authors emphasized that the large amounts required (5 mg. per liter) to modify the anaphylactic reaction in the perfused heart "indicates that other factors must also play a part in anaphylactic shock." Benadryl, Neo-Antergan, Pyribenzamine and Antergan were about equal in their inhibiting effect on the isolated, sensitized guinea pig ileal strip (462). Thephorin also performed the same function (109). However, the constriction of the bronchioles by the antigen in a perfused, sensitized lung preparation could not be prevented by Pyribenzamine (584).

Even though the antihistamines show such a profound influence on the manifestations of the antibody-antigen reaction *per se*, they are without immunologic effect in that they do not modify antibody production (344), precipitin or complement titer (18) or immunization activities in general (388).

#### INFLUENCE ON OTHER IMMUNOLOGIC RESPONSES

Closely related to the systemic anaphylactic reaction is the Arthus reaction. This is an anaphylactic reaction, although local in site, the severity of which is directly proportional to the amount of precipitin available at the

site of contact with the antigen, and is the result of antibody-antigen union. The tissue damage, usually consisting of a large, edematous, hemorrhagic and necrotic area, is the direct result of vascular damage, necrosis of the capillaries and terminal arterioles, interstitial edema and hemorrhagic and cellular infiltration. The damage to surrounding tissue appears to be due to the interference with nutrition which results from the vascular damage and from the clogging of the tissue spaces with hemorrhage and exudate. In light of the relationship of the Arthus reaction to hypersensitivity it is understandable why the effect of antihistamines on the reaction was investigated. However, in contrast to their effect in typical anaphylactic reactions, the antihistamines were found without influence on the course of this localized hypersensitivity reaction (119, 140, 194, 323), a result which seems to indicate that histamine plays no role in this phenomenon.

There is much evidence that the antihistamines do not affect the bacterial or tuberculin type of sensitivity reactions. Early in the history of these drugs Boquet (42) noted that 883F, 929F and Antergan failed to alter the tuberculin reaction in guinea pigs; he used chiefly 1:10 OT. The results with Antergan were later corroborated by Kreis (312). Fischel (194) confirmed these observations in his experiments on rabbits. Using both a purified protein derivative of tuberculin and a nucleoprotein fraction from a hemolytic streptococcus, he noted that the bacterial type of reaction was not altered by Pyribenzamine administered orally before and during the day of testing. Pyribenzamine also failed to



protect against the systemic tuberculin shock in the tuberculous guinea pig (562), and Neohetramine did not affect the reaction from 1 mg. OT (142). According to Sarber (478), some of the negative results were obtained because the doses of tuberculin used were too large and only one dose of the antihistamine was given. Using threshold doses of OT and giving the infected guinea pigs 25 mg. per kg. of Benadryl subcutaneously twice daily before and during the reaction period, he concluded that there was a definite trend toward lessening of the reactions.

By experiments on induced sensitization and allergic dermatitis, Mayer (384) proposed additional evidence that histamine plays an active role in the development not only of the initial phase of skin irritation but also of the contact dermatitis itself. He (385) reported on the effect of the antihistamines Pyribenzamine and Antergan on the inhibition of the inflammation of the eczematous reaction caused by sensitization to p-phenylenediamine. Both drugs had a greater effect when applied locally as an ointment or in oil than when administered subcutaneously. Brown and Werner (61) indicated that Decapryn given orally in large repeated doses or applied as an ointment also diminished the severity of lesions in guinea pigs sensitized to 2,4-dinitrochlorobenzene and p-nitrosodimethylaniline.

The evidence regarding the effect of the antihistamines on production of experimental hypersensitive vascular and cardiac lesions, such as periarteritis nodosa and myocarditis, is controversial. The technics used to produce these conditions simulate those of Rich and

Gregory (444) in that sterile horse serum is injected into rabbits intravenously with or without a subsequent dose. Kyser and associates (315, 316), investigating Benadryl and Searle antihistaminic drugs No. 1694 and 1627, noted that complete protection was afforded to all sensitized animals who had the concomitant use of the drug during the sensitization period. On the other hand, Roberts, Crockett and Laipply (448) and MacGregor and Wood (368) failed to confirm this observation with Benadryl. Roberts *et al.* used Benadryl in doses of 5 mg. per kg. twice during the course of the experimental procedure, just before the second and third sensitizing doses. MacGregor and Wood, however, did use larger amounts of Benadryl, giving up to 10 mg. per kg. twice daily for the 20 days during which the experiment was in progress. In neither report was any difference noted in the myocardial and endarteritic lesions which followed sensitization. The lesions were essentially those described by Rich and Gregory (444): there was a patchy or generalized arteritis with medial necrosis, a periarterial reaction in the adventitia with polymorphonuclear and eosinophilic leukocytic infiltration, small nodule formation, occasional valvular and endocardial lesions, and edema and necrotic collagen tissue near the severely affected vessels. These dissenting results indicate the need for additional experimentation before concluding what the value of the antihistamine is to be in experimental serum-induced myocarditis and other manifestations. Related to this problem is the edema produced in the rat by the intraperitoneal injection of egg white. Rats have a natural hypersensitivity to this pro-



tein. Léger and Masson (329) observed that Antistine, Benadryl and Neo-Antergan were all effective in inhibiting this edema. They did not claim, however, that these results inferred that the edema was due to local histamine release. Brown and Werner (61) obtained the same results with Decapryn.

The antihistaminic drugs have been evaluated with regard to other incidental experimental conditions which may also be classed as allergic. Leopold, Dean and Blazor (333) observed that Pyribenzamine prevented the production of anaphylactic uveitis in rabbits when given systemically before the challenging dose. Administration of the drug at the same time as the shocking dose had no effect. Pyribenzamine did not inhibit production of typical experimental meningoencephalomyelitis in guinea pigs which were injected subcutaneously with emulsions of fresh guinea pig brain and Freund's adjuvant (9). The animals had received, over the course of the experiment, weekly subcutaneous implantations of 500 mg. Pyribenzamine pellets in beeswax. Reubi (440) reported that Ciba's experimental antihistamine No. 5512M prevented the nephritis produced in rabbits by antiserum injections.

## Bioassay in Man

THE MAJOR PURPOSE of assay of the antihistaminic drugs in laboratory animals is to obtain information on their potential therapeutic worth in man. In a general way animal assays accomplish this purpose. Drugs which have antihistaminic activity in animals by the same token possess antiallergic action in man. When one attempts, however, to translate quantitatively potency in animal work into clinical therapy one encounters a number of discrepancies and difficulties. In many of the early and some recent publications of experimental work on antihistamines, claims for potency were based on the number of lethal doses of histamine which can be inhibited in the guinea pig by large doses of the compound. On that basis, for example, Neo-Antergan was found to be four times as potent as Pyribenzamine and 25 times as potent as Benadryl. It is obvious from clinical experience that such figures have no bearing on clinical potency.

One of the possible explanations for this discrepancy is that the amounts of histamine concerned in clinical



allergy in no way approximate the enormous quantities used in animal experiments, and it may be possible that with small doses of histamine the antihistamines display no such wide ranges of potency. Other methods of histamine assay have indeed pointed to this idea as at least one explanation. On the basis of antagonism of only one lethal dose of histamine it has been found that these drugs show more moderate differences in activity. A number of experimental technics in the laboratory, such as the inhibition of one lethal dose of histamine, the inhibition of bronchospasm from histamine aerosol and the prevention of histamine contraction of the ileal strip, have shown some quantitative relationship to one another and to antiallergic effect. The relationship to anti-allergic effectiveness has not been quantitative in the strict sense of the word. Nevertheless, a drug which assays as very weak by such methods is not potent for man, whereas another which has potent antihistaminic action also turns out to be potent in its antiallergic action.

In addition to the possible species differences in response between the laboratory animal and man, we cannot ignore the fact that in assaying antihistaminic action we may be overlooking responses other than that of histamine in the hypersensitive state. That such may be the case is particularly suspected from two observations. Inhibition of anaphylactic death in the laboratory animal is more difficult and requires a larger dose of antihistaminic drug than prevention of histamine shock. Clinical therapy is quantitatively closer in agreement with anaphylaxis than with histamine effect (219). Moreover, it should be pointed out that toxicity is measured in ani-

mals on the basis of convulsions and death, whereas in man it is measured in large part on the basis of sedation from moderate doses.

### THERAPEUTIC EVALUATION

In the ultimate analysis, the value of a drug is judged by the capabilities it has to remedy the abnormal manifestations for which it is intended. When the manifestations are chiefly objective and constant this problem is relatively simple. Allergy, however, is characterized by a preponderance of subjective manifestations, varying in degree in different persons and at different times and with place, season, age, mental attitude and interpretation of the observer. To evaluate a remedy here, the problem becomes more difficult and the interpretation less secure. It is for this reason that the clinical literature on antihistamines is rampant with claims and conclusions which are misleading. It behooves the practicing physician to scrutinize each report on clinical therapy critically and to ask himself the question: "Has the observer considered these variables in his clinical investigation?" A brief discussion of the major variables encountered in the evaluation of antihistamines may be of help.

*The patient.*—A number of variables which concern the allergic patient must be considered in the interpretation of a therapeutic test. Age is a factor; children usually respond better than adults to antihistamines. The predominant symptom and the effect of the drug on a particular symptom of a syndrome is of significance. For example, the antihistamines are more effective against sneezing than against nasal blocking. Evaluation of the



effects of these drugs from this standpoint, as has been done by Sheldon and his co-workers (499), is rare. It is quite different, for example, to judge the potency of a drug on the basis of cases of mild urticaria and compare this potency with the effect another drug has in severe penicillin or sulfonamide reactions, which as a rule require several times the ordinary dose for effective results.

Allergic syndromes are prone to cyclic changes. The hay fever patient who has an hour of suffering in the morning cannot be tabulated as a therapeutic success if his symptoms cease 30-60 minutes after taking a pill. And if symptoms regularly last several hours in the morning, the duration of effect of the pill cannot be listed as 24 hours because he has no recurrence until the following morning (179). In many other allergic manifestations periodic fluctuation is the rule and a clinical effect should only be ascertained by repeated and consistent behavior.

In assaying an antihistamine in hay fever it may be pertinent to know whether the group studied is average in intensity of symptoms or is a selective group. If mildness of hay fever is such that the patients seldom seek desensitization treatment, a large percentage will obtain benefit from antihistamines. On the other hand, the allergist who sees the difficult cases which have been unresponsive to other measures is apt to find a lower incidence of effect from these drugs. Everything else being equal, it has been found that those patients who take desensitization treatment respond better to the drugs than do those who have had no desensitization therapy (16, 178, 212, 564).

The mental attitude of the patient is not to be ignored. We know some patients who claim improvement from every type of antihistamine, no matter what the dose, and even from a placebo tablet. Others will admit no improvement even when objectively one can see that it is present. It matters, therefore, what type of group is being evaluated, whether it is a clinic or private group, a laboring or professional group, a phlegmatic or more emotional class.

*Environmental variables.*—In seasonal hay fever especially, the environmental variables are tremendous. Grass hay fever as a rule responds much better to antihistamines than does ragweed, primarily because the seasons are usually less severe. One cannot compare on an equal basis the results of antihistamine therapy in ragweed or mold cases in New York City, Chicago and Los Angeles, where the quantitative pollen differs materially. A drug studied in a mild hay fever season cannot be justly compared with another drug tried in a severe season. Drugs cannot even be compared during the same season if one drug is used one part of the season and another drug the next; for example, the later stages of hay fever due to nasal stuffiness are less likely to be influenced than are the earlier symptoms of sneezing and rhinorrhea. It is regrettable that in most reports on clinical evaluation these factors are ignored or, if mentioned, are often dismissed with the inference that they are outweighed by the findings (288).

*Other conditions.*—Comparison of results by different observers, with different seasons, different drugs and different locales, is almost worthless. This has been empha-



sized by Loveless and Dworin (360) in their review. Even if the results are combined or averaged their significance is questionable. Indeed, too many of the reports have virtually no basis for comparison, other than perhaps the difference between using and not using an antihistamine. One of the most critical means of evaluation is the use of the crossover trials in which one drug is compared with another intermittently (15, 178, 201, 359). Another method is to employ a separate group of subjects for each drug during the same period. It is risky even for the same observer to compare one drug in one season with another in the next unless due care is observed in equalizing the conditions.

The criteria for effects are often ignored and usually not even mentioned. While it is futile to count the number of sneezes, some rough criteria of symptoms, such as the number of hours of discomfort, days of disability, etc., can be made. Placebo controls are often advisable (564) although they are not necessary if an array of antihistamines of varying potency is used. Observers who do only an occasional therapeutic trial of this sort are urged to make a control study with placebos, preferably in the same patients receiving the antihistamines.

The number of patients observed must be adequate. How many patients are actually needed to make results in the group significant depends on a number of factors, including the experience of the observers, the methods of observation, the frequency with which patients are seen and the purpose of the observations. Thirty patients with hay fever, for example, would be sufficient to note whether a drug is effective, but it might take 10 times

that number to serve as a basis for comparison with another drug.

The difficulties of assessing toxic effects are perhaps even greater than those in evaluation of therapeutic results. The very severe toxicities offer no difficulties, but the more moderate may be largely dependent on the type of patient, the attitude of the observer, and the dosage used.

It should be mentioned that some conditions, particularly dermatoses (308), lend themselves better to objective analysis. Perhaps other conditions also could be studied more objectively, such as asthma by respiratory function tests or allergic rhinitis by nasal air flow.

*The clinical investigator.*—When objective findings are of least help the reliability of the observer becomes paramount. A clinical therapy report in which the investigator is biased, selfish, lacking in integrity or without critical observation can and does mislead. Those who have sufficient experience in the field learn to judge the report for what it is worth. Some clinicians are inclined to grow increasingly enthusiastic with each new antihistamine; others may display insufficient clinical awareness, while still others actually lack the experience necessary to enable them to evaluate the drugs properly. It is even possible for an observer's attitude to change honestly with advancing developments. For example, it is fair to say that with the acceptance of the value of the antihistamines we have now set for ourselves more rigid criteria for effectiveness than we did several years ago. The net result is that whereas four or five years ago a given drug was recorded by us as being effective in 80



per cent of hay fever patients, perhaps now with our modified standards this incidence might be only 65 or 60 per cent.

### OBJECTIVE METHODS

It is thus apparent that the experimental laboratory cannot give the direct answer to the therapeutic value and potency of an antihistamine and that a clinical therapeutic evaluation is long drawn out, requires many subjects and has many pitfalls. Objective methods which could be applied to man would offer many advantages. Such objective procedures attempt mainly to assay quantitative inhibition of histamines, the local antigen-antibody whealing and the toxic effects of the drug.

*Histamine asthma.*—Bronchoconstriction in man has been produced by Curry (112) who found that it could be inhibited by the administration of an antihistamine. This technic could probably be quantitated to study antihistaminic activity of a drug. However, human bronchoconstriction produced by an aerosolized allergen is apparently not readily prevented by the same drugs. In line with these experiments, it has been found (341) that in asthma spirometric changes following administration of Benadryl were negligible, whereas after epinephrine or aminophylline the changes were decided.

*Histamine wheal and flare.*—The capacity of human skin to respond to histamine by wheal and flare has been known for a long time. This responsiveness and its normal variations have been studied quantitatively with the histamine introduced by electrophoresis (500), intradermally and by abrasion technic (358). We have

shown that the flare as well as the wheal response is in proportion to the concentration of the histamine applied and that the flare size can be more easily measured. In 1942, Parrot (415) demonstrated that the histamine wheal and flare could be inhibited by Antergan. Friedlaender and Feinberg (204) several years ago reported a study in which the wheals of histamine, antigen-antibody reactions and other whealing agents were inhibited by local and oral administration of Benadryl.

Rough quantitative studies on electrophoretic introduction of histamine and Pyribenzamine were reported in 1947 by Aaron and Abramson (2). Schwartz and Wolf (484) compared the potency of antihistaminic drugs by noting the incidence of inhibition of wheals and flares from histamine 1:1,000 and ragweed 1:40 when 5 per cent (or 2.5 per cent) of the antihistamine was applied on the scratch. Such a technic could by no means be regarded as quantitative, and it led to such obviously incorrect interpretations that Antistine had greater antihistaminic activity than Pyribenzamine and greater antiallergic effect than Benadryl. Bain (24) made an impressive quantitative study by using intradermal injections of graded doses of histamine and antihistamine.

We felt that perhaps quantitative inhibition of the histamine wheal and flare on the human skin by local application of the antihistamine might be useful in the assay of these drugs. Such an assay, if reliable, could be done on a few subjects and would not require long periods of clinical observations. Although not to be regarded as the final evaluation, it could, nevertheless,



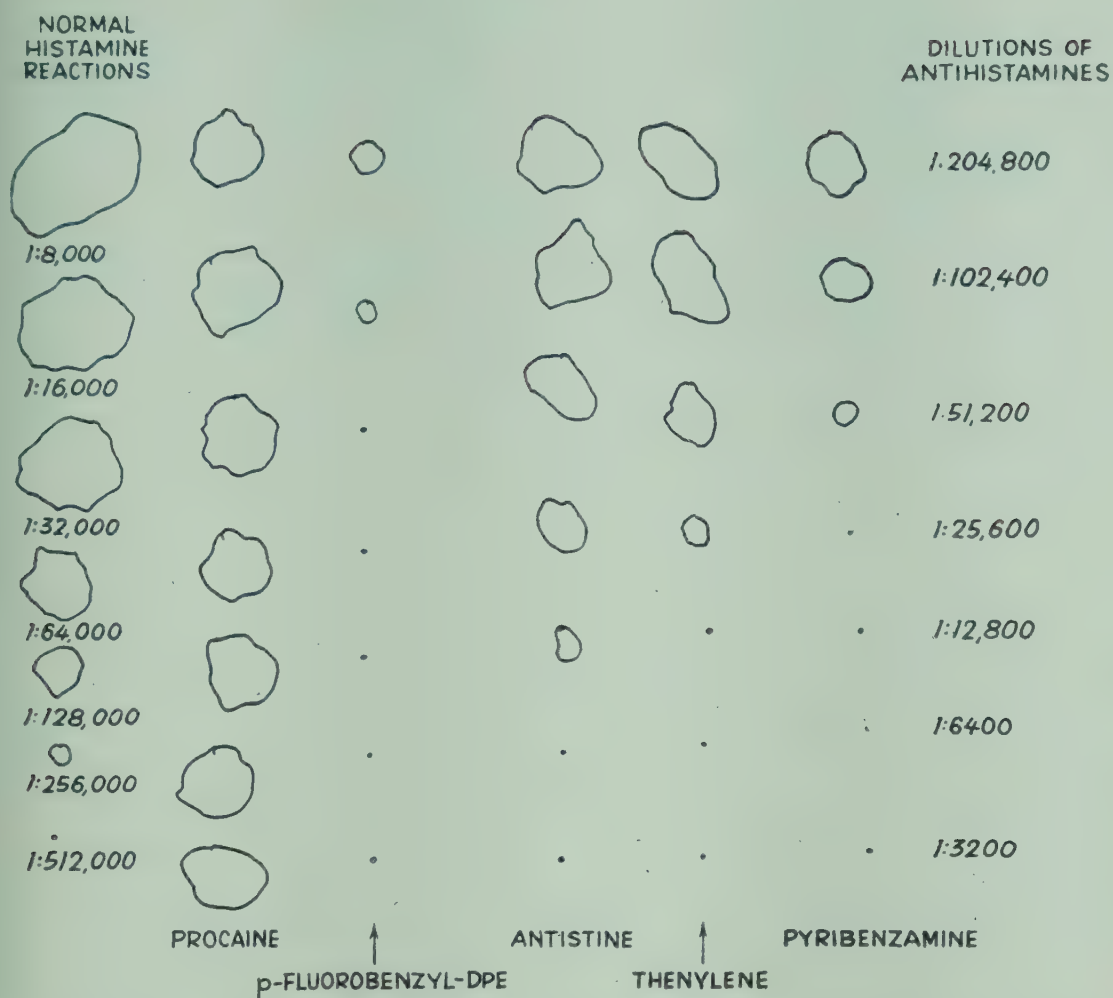


FIG. 27.—Quantitative inhibition of histamine reaction. Sensitivity of subject is determined by titration of histamine dilutions applied to series of scratches on the back. Dilutions of antihistamines are placed on several abraded areas at the same visit. After 10 minutes the drugs are washed off, and a drop of the concentration of histamine which gave one-half maximal flare (1:64,000 in this case) is applied to each site. Flares occurring about 10 minutes later are outlined with a ballpoint pen and the tracings transferred to paper. The different degrees of inhibition with various drugs are noted in the figure above. This assay is repeated on 20–40 subjects and the results averaged.

serve as a screening program to indicate which drugs are worthy of clinical trial. After several years of investigation we (358) adopted the following technic which we used for the evaluation of a large series of drugs.

Histamine reactions are titrated on normal subjects using histamine solutions from 1:8,000 to 1:512,000 (in terms of base), in increments of 100 per cent, placed on circular abrasions made by a piece of hollow

TABLE 1.—INHIBITION OF HISTAMINE FLARE BY TOPICAL APPLICATION OF ANTIHISTAMINE

	RELATIVE POTENCY, %		RELATIVE POTENCY, %
Pyribenzamine	100	Pyrrolazote	53
Benadryl	38	Decapryn	75
Neo-Antergan	60	C5581-H (Bristol)	31
Antistine	28	Thephorin	28
Thenylene	53	Trimeton	35
Phenergan	40	01780 (Lilly)	14
3015 (Rhône-Poulenc)	21	01003 (Lilly)	12
Chlorothen	48	194B (White)	53
Neohetramine	25	p-Fluorobenzyl-DPE (Lederle)	200

tubing about 1 mm. in diameter. After the flares are traced, the histamine solution giving one-half maximal flare is used in the inhibition test. The antihistaminic drug is placed on a series of abrasions in dilutions of 1:204,800 to 1:3,200, and after 10 minutes the drops are washed off and the histamine applied. Reactions are noted in about 10 minutes. Usually three or four drugs are thus compared at the same time on the subject's back. A number of subjects are used for each experiment. The difference between the end point of different drugs is regarded as a measurement of difference in inhibiting power.

As a whole this method has shown good clinical



agreement for all but one or two compounds. It is recognized that at best this technic can only measure the effect on histamine. Similar evaluations of the allergic reaction might be more dependable. Furthermore, this method does not take into account variations in absorption, time lag and other metabolic effects which might be factors in administering the drug orally. The mediocre results on local application of Phenergan and chlorcyclizine might well be explained on some such basis.

In the past two years we (75) had been working on a method by which such histamine and antigen reaction can be studied after ingestion of antihistamines. There are a number of difficulties with this technic, primarily because large doses of drug are required to produce any effect which can be quantitated. Meanwhile a number of other workers have reported procedures based on similar principles.

Kallos and his associates (294) reported in 1947 that the intensity of the histamine flare and its inhibition by Antistine could be measured and thus quantitated. Bain and co-workers (24, 25) found that after oral administration of antihistamine the log-dose-response curve to intradermal histamine shifts to occupy at any given time a new position so that there is an equal percentage reduction of wheal area of the test doses of histamine over a range of 0.03–10  $\mu$ g. If this dose-response curve is determined on several subjects and repeated with other drugs, since the dose-response curves are parallel, the mean relative weight-for-weight potencies can be estimated. On this basis they found that

Phenergan was 15 times more potent than Antistine and seven times more potent than Neo-Antergan. The duration of one-half maximal effect on the wheal for Phenergan was 5.6 times greater than that for Antistine and 3.8 times greater than that for Neo-Antergan. Careful clinical observations of the effect of Phenergan and Neo-Antergan on chronic urticaria agreed well with the anti-whealing assays. Benadryl was found to be rather weak and had short-lasting effect.

Jaros and his associates (289) compared chlorcyclizine with Pyribenzamine by noting the effect of the oral administration of these compounds on the histamine wheal inhibition. Since wheals as small as 0.5 mm. were recorded, the dependability of interpretations from such a study are open to question. Serafini (493) also showed the varying degrees of inhibition of wheals and flares from different concentrations of histamine after oral administration of an antihistamine. However, he did not develop the method to employ it for potency studies.

The effect of various antihistamines given orally on the skin histamine reaction threshold by iontophoresis was studied by Perry and his associates (423). In order of decreasing effectiveness, the drugs tested ranged as follows: Hydryllin, Pyribenzamine, Benadryl, ephedrine and aminophylline. Sternberg and co-workers (521) used a similar technic. From their results they concluded that Pyribenzamine, Benadryl, Neo-Antergan and Hydryllin were the most potent and about equally effective. From there on, in diminishing effectiveness were listed Thephorin, Diatrin, Trimeton, Decapryn, Tagathen, Thenylene and Histadyl, Neohetramine and Antistine.



The authors inferred that these findings correlate closely with clinical experience. Not only do some of these findings disagree with ours, Bain's and those of other experimenters, but they also are not in accord with many of the clinical observations. Furthermore, there are obvious discrepancies in the data and graphs. Thenylene, 100 mg., is listed as being identical in potency with Histadyl, 50 mg.: both are trade names for the same drug, methapyrilene. The wide fluctuation of responses in individuals, the use of only 10 subjects for each evaluation and the use of different subjects for each drug introduce so many variables as to make the interpretation doubtful.

Peck and his associates (417) studied the effect of various routes of administration of Pyribenzamine on the wheal produced by 0.05 cc. of 1:10,000 histamine phosphate given intradermally. They found that oral administration, local injection and iontophoresis reduced the histamine wheal and flare, while ointment had little effect on the histamine reaction. On the other hand, in epidermal sensitivity, where the skin was broken, Pyribenzamine was absorbed from the ointment, since good therapeutic results were obtained. Nilzen (407) showed that a mixture of antihistamine with histamine reduced the wheals caused by the latter when applied by scratch or intradermally. In order of diminishing effectiveness the antihistamines ranked in the following order: Neo-Antergan, Antergan, Thenylene, Benadryl, Pyribenzamine, Antistine, Neohetramine, and Thephorin.

*Inhibition of allergic wheal.*—Vallery-Radot and co-workers (551) made quantitative studies on the inhibition of local passive transfer reaction. They determined

the dose of drug necessary to completely inhibit the reaction. It was found that the dose of Phenergan was only about 30 per cent of the dose of Neo-Antergan or Antergan. The duration of action of Phenergan was much longer. The doses required for the inhibition of this wheal were greater than those required for therapeutic effects. The effects on direct skin tests have also been observed. More work on this phase of assay is in progress in our laboratory.

*Toxicity assay.*—Mention has already been made of the evaluation of the toxicity index of an antihistamine. Such evaluations have the same inherent difficulties as therapeutic trials, with perhaps the additional disadvantage that objective signs are usually absent. Objective tests would offer a more critical basis for assay of toxicity. Holtkamp and his associates (273) reported an objective assay. By using tests of mental ability, reaction time, two-point discrimination distance and other techniques they measured the effects of therapeutic doses of Benadryl, Pyribenzamine and Hydryllin. With these drugs there is an appreciable change in all the mental tests in over half the subjects. Pyribenzamine affected the greater number, but Benadryl occasionally produced effects of considerably greater magnitude. Hydryllin caused increased efficiency in most subjects but decreased it in a few.



# CLINICAL OBSERVATIONS





## CHAPTER 6

# Respiratory Allergy

THE MAJOR syndromes of allergy of the respiratory tract are seasonal hay fever, nonseasonal vasomotor rhinitis, persistent or recurring cough (particularly in children) and asthma. The antihistaminic drugs do not affect all of these manifestations to the same degree: the differences will be pointed out in the ensuing discussion. Furthermore, since this manual concerns the antihistamines one might gain the impression that these drugs are extolled as the main or only treatment of respiratory allergy. It is therefore important at the very beginning of the description of antihistamine therapy to call attention to the fact that other forms of therapy are not only helpful in addition to antihistamine therapy but may be the only effective remedies in some patients or under certain conditions.

### ANTIHISTAMINES IN HAY FEVER AND PERENNIAL VASOMOTOR RHINITIS

Of the allergic respiratory manifestations, seasonal hay fever has responded best to the antihistamines. In

perennial vasomotor rhinitis, whether due to allergic factors or so-called "intrinsic," results have not been as good. This difference is more likely due to differences in the secondary changes produced by long-lasting nasal allergy than to differences in the nature of the allergen. The effects of antihistamines on the nasal symptoms are purely palliative and in no way shorten the duration of the entire syndrome, except as the prevention of severe congestion may to a certain extent prevent the production of secondary tissue changes. Each dose of drug is effective for only a few hours at a time. From experimental and clinical studies it can be assumed that these drugs have no influence on the immune response in allergy, that is, they neither interfere with the production of immune bodies by desensitizing injections nor do they increase the immune substances.

*Effect on symptoms.*—The hyperesthetic manifestations of nasal allergy, such as tickling of the nose, sneezing and itching of the eyes and palate, are the symptoms most susceptible to palliation with antihistamines (499). The rhinorrhea is usually also modified, although with large doses or in some persons with small doses the drying effects on the nose and throat may be so pronounced as to become objectionable features of such therapy. Indeed, it is this drying effect occurring in some persons which is the major basis for the belief, encouraged by some, that these drugs are effective remedies for the infectious cold. The nasal obstruction is also benefited, but usually to a less extent and in fewer patients than is the case with the other symptoms (174, 175, 178). It is thus easy to understand why the later stages of hay



fever are not so frequently or effectively benefited by the antihistamines. It is also not surprising that the types of hay fever which have long seasons and chronic vasomotor rhinitis show less response to these drugs. Whether this difference in response signifies the presence in those boggy turbinates of a mediator or mechanism in addition to histamine or merely the presence of a larger amount of histamine has not been settled. The fact that topical application of an antihistaminic drug in such difficult cases has often been helpful lends credence to the histamine-excess hypothesis.

It cannot be overemphasized that the asthma associated with hay fever is not prevented appreciably by the antihistamines. Hence, no matter how effectively the nasal symptoms may be controlled by these drugs, those persons who have had (or are destined to have) an associated asthma will, as a rule, continue to have it. Since desensitization therapy effectively prevents asthma in patients with pollen or mold allergy, it is unjustifiable to substitute the antihistamines for such therapy in these patients. Since about 35 per cent of the patients with ragweed hay fever have an associated asthma and since the asthma may be initiated in the early or later years of the sufferer's hay fever, it follows that any person who depends on the antihistamines for relief may be confronted at any season with asthma.

Occasionally a dose of an antihistamine given about one hour before a desensitizing injection may be useful in preventing local and systemic reactions in highly susceptible persons. When the desensitizing dose cannot be appreciably increased because of repeated constitutional

reactions, moderate increments may be made with the aid of the antihistamine; however, it is rarely possible to give very large doses, such as several tolerance doses, in this manner. Antihistaminic drugs should not be used routinely for this purpose.

Almost from the beginning of our clinical experience with antihistaminic drugs in 1945 we learned to utilize them as diagnostic agents in differentiating questionable nasal allergy from colds or chronic nasal infections. Thus, we administered an antihistamine to patients with known allergic rhinitis when the question arose whether the current episode was a recurrence of the allergy or an infectious cold, and to patients with chronic nasal symptoms which could not be identified definitely as infectious or allergic. When the symptoms were well controlled by repeated doses of the drug, subsequent developments showed that we were dealing with an allergy. If the symptoms were not definitely controlled, developments indicated that many of them were of an infectious nature.

*Dosage and administration.*—Although this subject will be discussed in detail in Chapter 9, some of the salient points of the methods of use of antihistamines in nasal allergy may be briefly mentioned. It has been the custom of many physicians to prescribe these drugs several times daily at regular intervals for hay fever and perennial rhinitis. Such dosage should only be required in patients who have continuous symptoms, and they are in the minority. Most patients will require only a morning dose, with perhaps an additional evening or bedtime dose. When the symptoms occur irregularly, it may be



well to instruct the patient to take the drug as needed. In some instances the use of a bedtime dose may relieve the nasal congestion so that the morning symptoms are lessened. At times this effect may be achieved more adequately by longer acting or enteric-coated antihistamines. For most of the drugs the effect lasts not longer than about four to six hours (334). More lasting effects can be obtained in a large percentage of patients with Phenergan or chlorcyclizine (Di-Paralene or Perazil).

The average dose of most drugs for nasal allergies is 50 mg. To achieve the same effect with drugs such as Neohetramine and Antistine a dose of 100 mg. or more is required. On the other hand, Decapryn in 25 mg. doses is quite effective, whereas in 50 mg. doses it is too sedative for most persons. The average dose of Phenergan is 15–25 mg. Chlor-Trimeton is customarily used in 4 mg. doses, although many patients require doses of 8 or 12 mg. Toxicity with the latter doses is apt to be severe. Children are given smaller doses. Although it is characteristic of these drugs that children often tolerate them in amounts as large as those given adults and frequently tolerate them better, this applies only to moderate doses, when sedation is the major toxic effect. Children are more prone to excitatory effects from the antihistamines, behaving in this respect like the laboratory animal. From the records of toxic effects in children and of the fatal results it is suspected that in excessive dosage these drugs may be more dangerous to children.

In patients with nasal allergy resistant to oral medication, topical application may be helpful. We have found that solutions in the form of nose drops are frequently

irritating, whereas a fine spray, particularly the mist type obtained with a nebulizer, is better tolerated. The spraying may have to be repeated a number of times at frequent intervals before evident results are obtained.

*Incidence and degree of effect.*—With full therapeutic doses our experience indicates that 50–80 per cent of seasonal hay fever patients in the Midwest will obtain sufficient benefit to make use of these drugs worth while. The incidence of relief in perennial vasomotor rhinitis will be about 40–65 per cent. The variation in these percentages is primarily due to the different effects of different drugs but is also caused by seasonal differences. Spain and Pflum (511) reported the results obtained by collaborators with the Committee on Therapy of the American Academy of Allergy. Benadryl, Pyribenzamine, Neo-Antergan, Hydryllin and Trimeton were used. In 60–75 per cent of patients with seasonal hay fever there were varying degrees of improvement, while in nonseasonal rhinitis 50 per cent benefited.

In the evaluation of any report, it should be realized that the standards of observers differ. Some practitioners may classify occasional benefit from the drug as a positive result. Others regard any deviation from the usual symptoms, no matter how slight, as an instance of improvement. Others may be so conservative as to demand benefit every time the drug is used in a particular person. It is difficult, of course, to set precise standards in a condition which is mainly subjective in nature. The best criterion of effectiveness we have been able to employ is the ability of the drug to be productive of results worth while to the patient in the majority of episodes



of his disease. We have been skeptical of any results classified by ourselves or others as "fair."

A number of factors determine the likelihood of a beneficial result in any individual or the incidence of benefit in a group. The most puzzling of these is an individual variation which does not appear to be dependent on the severity of the allergy. Some persons fail to respond to any antihistamine despite the fact that they have mild symptoms. Others are benefited by one drug and not by another, although the latter may be more potent for the majority. This individuality is not only of practical importance in therapy, but the solution of its mechanism would probably shed much light on the antigen-antibody or histamine mechanism.

In general, the severity of the nasal symptoms will determine the likelihood and degree of benefit. Thus, patients with mild hay fever or sporadic and mild perennial allergy may do exceedingly well with antihistamine therapy. Patients with the milder varieties of hay fever, such as tree pollinosis, and many grass-pollen-sensitive patients may also obtain good results, whereas a larger proportion of ragweed cases may be resistant to the drugs. By the same token, the results can differ substantially in different parts of the country. The Bostonian who has ragweed hay fever has a better opportunity to be benefited by an antihistamine or by a moderate amount of desensitizing treatment than the Chicagoan with the same disease. And, as a corollary, it is not surprising that the incidence of results observed or the amount of drug required to achieve results may differ for the Boston and Chicago physician.

Even the season in any locality may differ from year to year and influence the results. Thus, in reporting the results of antihistamine therapy during the 1946 ragweed season we (174) made the cautionary statement that results in more severe seasons may not prove to be as good. This has actually turned out to be the case. Since all drugs are not evaluated in any one season, it is important to know, if possible, during which season the observations were made and to take the severity of the season into consideration.

In the early part of the season the hay fever sufferer may respond well to antihistamines. When the pollen or mold spore content of the air becomes high as the season advances, the effectiveness of therapy may decrease or the therapy may be completely inadequate. In the later part of the season, even when the amount of pollen or mold spores is diminishing, the stage of nasal stuffiness may be more pronounced. Then the chances for effective results are not as good as they are in the stage of sneezing and rhinorrhea.

Desensitization therapy, whether in pollen, mold or dust allergy, if it does not abolish a large part of the symptoms, is at least likely to turn a severe allergy into a milder one. Hence, it is not surprising to find that the antihistamines are more effective in desensitized than in nondesensitized patients. Even when no apparent clinical result can be observed from desensitization, antihistamine therapy is apt to be more effective (16, 41, 178, 212, 564). Blumenthal (41) obtained relief of symptoms in about 56 per cent of patients with desensitization



alone, in 47 per cent with antihistamines alone, and in 88 per cent with combined therapies.

Patients frequently remark that a dose of an antihistaminic drug which previously helped them is no longer as effective. If all the seasonal factors and variables previously discussed are eliminated and if only the stabilized forms of chronic rhinitis are considered, there would appear two alternative explanations. One is that the sufferer, after some period of partial relief which was originally appreciated and properly classified, has now unconsciously set for himself a new standard. Since he still has symptoms which he would like to dispose of, he now feels that the antihistamine is not doing much for him. Native Bostonians or New Yorkers complain as much from ragweed hay fever as do those who live in Chicago or Indianapolis. Each has created a standard and he knows no other, unless perchance he visits the other locality. Thus it may be with different levels of symptoms before and after continued antihistamine therapy. On the other hand, it is not inconceivable that a tolerance for the drug may actually develop. A tolerance for the sedative action appears to be common after continued use of an antihistamine. At any rate, the question is important practically and theoretically and we are now engaged in a study of this problem. Our preliminary results (119a) indicate that continued administration of an antihistamine produces a diminished ability of the drug and related drugs to inhibit the skin reaction to histamine and to antigens. The findings of Monash (397a) are similar.

ANTI-HISTAMINES IN ASTHMA AND  
ALLERGIC COUGH

A spasmodic and recurring cough, without wheezing and especially without dyspnea, is a frequent allergic phenomenon in children and may also occur in adults. It is usually associated with nasal allergy, although at times the latter may be absent. Such coughs often respond favorably to antihistaminic drugs. For example, of nine such patients in one series, Thenylene was found to be effective in six (182). The cough in the preasthmatic stage at the beginning of an acute attack of asthma may also be materially influenced by antihistamines.

Frank asthma, on the other hand, has in our experience proved to be virtually unresponsive to the antihistamines. We do not mean to imply that these drugs are of no help at all, but we emphatically maintain that seldom are they as effective or as useful as other remedies, such as ephedrine, epinephrine, Isuprel (Norisodrine), aminophylline and iodides. As an adjunct to other medications they may at times be of some aid. There are times when it is suspected that antihistamines may aggravate the asthma, possibly because of their drying effect on the bronchial secretions.

The majority of asthma specialists agree that the results with antihistamines in asthma are not as good as those in nasal allergy. Results of different observers range from a negligible incidence to about 70 per cent. No doubt much of this variation depends on the vicissitudes of the asthmatic syndrome. Many of the good re-



ports are probably due to continued antihistamine administration, when it is difficult to assign the result to the therapy. Perhaps also some of the alleged relief from asthma is due to the general quieting effect of the sedative action of these drugs. In this connection an objective study made by Levy and Seabury (341) appears significant. Benadryl was given in 100 mg. doses to a series of asthmatic patients; for a comparison of effect, some were given 0.3 mg. epinephrine subcutaneously or 0.25 Gm. aminophylline intravenously. One-half and one hour after Benadryl administration determinations of the vital capacity, tidal air, minute ventilation, expiratory differential, respiratory rate and degree of emphysema showed no consistent effects. In several who obtained subjective benefit no spirometric improvement was noted. Epinephrine and aminophylline produced decided spirometric changes.

At times we have seen relief from asthma following intravenous or intramuscular injection of an antihistamine. However, we cannot be sure that this was not due to the sedative effect of the drug.

The relative inefficiency of the antihistamines in asthma has raised the question of the presence of a mechanism in asthma which may differ from that in nasal allergy or urticaria. One cannot deny the possibility of this. On the other hand, the failure to respond may merely signify the release of an excessive amount of histamine which cannot be combated by the amount of antihistamine the patient is able to tolerate. Our experience with antihistamine aerosols tends to support the second explanation. We have found that aerosols of

antihistamines, such as Pyribenzamine, are frequently effective in asthma. The amount which some patients require is so small that it is actually only a fraction of what is customarily taken by mouth. But the concentration reaching the bronchial tissues from the aerosol may be several times that reaching the same tissue after the drug is absorbed from the digestive tract.

#### INDIVIDUAL DRUGS—RESULTS

An additional few words of caution are indicated before discussing the individual drugs. The reader should bear in mind that not all reports are based on the same criteria and that most of the variables discussed in this and the preceding chapter may enter into the interpretation of any report. Also, for purposes of practicality and brevity, the number of reports for each drug had to be kept to a reasonable few. The choice of articles was influenced by a number of considerations which have necessitated the omission of many sources which were as good as or better than the ones included.

*Antergan.*—This was the first of the present antihistamine series to be used therapeutically. It was introduced for clinical use in France in 1942 and was employed in Europe as the only antihistamine until Neo-Antergan supplanted it in 1945. Antergan is an active drug, but it has a high toxicity and is not well tolerated by man. Although we had the drug from France since 1945, our experience with it has been confined solely to experimental work in the laboratory.

Gaté (215) and her co-workers reported good results in a series of patients who had hay fever, perennial rhi-



nitis, asthma or dermatoses. Decourt (125) obtained variable results in asthma and hay fever. Celice and his associates (80) reported satisfactory results in asthma and other allergic manifestations.

*Antistine*.—This drug was first introduced in Switzerland in 1946. Since then it has been used in some parts of Europe and also in this country. Milligram for milligram it is one of the least potent of the current marketed drugs, approximating in this respect only one other marketed drug, Neohetramine. Antistine has only a slight sedative effect, hence larger doses are usually tolerated. Our experience with this drug indicates that it is too weak for general use and that doses of at least 100–200 mg. are required to produce fairly consistent effects. We have confined its use primarily to those patients who have a great tendency to be sedated by virtually all antihistamines. In such instances, Antistine may be helpful. It should not be inferred that this compound causes no undesirable reactions; with large doses, and in some persons with moderate doses, sedation or gastrointestinal irritation results. Antistine eye drops are often beneficial in allergic conjunctivitis.

Schindler (480), in 1946, reported encouraging results with this drug in asthma. Gay and his associates (219) (Baltimore) compared eight antihistamines clinically and concluded that the potencies of seven were virtually the same. The exception was Antistine, for which twice the dose was required. Kallos (293) found the drug valuable in allergic rhinitis and other conditions, but neither orally nor hypodermically was it effective in asthma. Frei and Walterspiel (198) re-

ported good results in nasal allergy, but in asthma the effect was weak. It must be emphasized that most of the European observers, at least at the time they issued their reports, had no basis for clinical comparison with more potent antihistamines. To one who has not tried any other antihistamine Antistine may appear a very desirable addition to the therapy of allergy. The Friedlaenders (201) compared Antistine clinically with Pyribenzamine. They found a response in 59 per cent of patients with allergic rhinitis, using doses of 50–100 mg. However, most patients who tried both drugs preferred Pyribenzamine.

*Benadryl*.—This was the first American antihistamine to be marketed. It gives satisfactory results in a large percentage of patients but has the disadvantage that it is often too sedative. Although some of the later drugs are frequently more effective in nasal allergy, Benadryl has established a great popularity because of its priority. In some instances Benadryl may be preferred to other drugs either because sedative action may be desirable or because its anticholinergic action may be of advantage in conditions such as asthma. In comparing this drug with Pyribenzamine and Neo-Antergan in a series of patients we (34) found that the latter two were more effective.

The findings on this drug by various authors differ somewhat. Thus, Koelsche and his associates (311) (Rochester, Minn.) reported that 75 per cent of 52 patients with uncomplicated hay fever obtained 50 per cent or more relief. Of 19 patients with asthma associated with hay fever, 74 per cent obtained relief. In



other asthmas, however, only four of 12 benefited. These findings agree fairly well with those of Eyermann (162) in St. Louis. During the 1945 season he observed relief in 67 per cent of hay fever patients and in 31 per cent of the asthmatics who had mild wheezing. Approximately the same results were obtained by Waldbott (555) in Detroit. Levin (334) (Detroit) obtained a 59 per cent incidence of relief in hay fever during the 1945 season and noted that, although allergic asthma was benefited, infectious asthma was not helped and four cases of asthma were aggravated.

Less encouraging results have been reported by others. Engelsher (155) reported that relief occurred in only about one third of his hay fever patients and in virtually no patients with asthma. In reporting the first trial of the drug in children during 1945, Logan (355) found that it was not very effective in asthma. Our early impressions of the poor results in asthma, reported in 1945 (185), have been corroborated by subsequent experience. The results obtained in asthma by McGavack and associates (366) are better than those of other workers. They believe that this is due to their custom of giving the drug continuously. It is interesting to note that they obtained improvement in four of eight cases of cardiac asthma.

*Chlorcyclizine*.—This drug is marketed under two trade names, Di-Paralene (Abbott Laboratories) and Perazil (Burroughs Wellcome & Co.). The compound was presented to one of us (S.M.F.) almost simultaneously by the two pharmaceutical houses, early in 1948. It is moderately effective in allergic manifestations, but its

action is not as consistent as that of some of the other potent antihistamines. Its chief advantage is the tendency to prolonged action, which in some instances results in relief lasting six to 15 hours. This prolonged action is particularly useful in cases in which morning or night symptoms may be prevented by a bedtime dose. Unfortunately, this long-lasting effect is not always present. The average dose in our experience is 50–100 mg. In some patients the onset of effect is longer than that with other antihistaminic drugs. As with all the antihistamines, beneficial results in asthma were rarely obtained.

In the 1948 and 1949 hay fever seasons in Chicago, in one series we (179) found that this drug helped 46 of 87 desensitized patients (when antihistamines were required) and 16 of 38 patients who were not desensitized. In addition, the effect of the drug was more complete in desensitized patients than in those not desensitized. In perennial rhinitis 18 of 43 patients were benefited. Cough was benefited in four of eight patients, but only three of 36 asthma patients were relieved. The toxic effects were as a rule mild and infrequent.

The first clinical report on this drug was presented by Jaros (288) who was associated at the time with Burroughs Wellcome & Co. He found that in Eastern New York State, during the 1948 season, 22 of 23 patients with seasonal hay fever were improved, while 18 of 21 patients with perennial rhinitis were relieved. He recommended one dose of 25 mg. in 24 hours. He concluded that "clinical experiments indicate greater efficiency and less toxicity than with Pyribenzamine." In



view of the small number of patients, the mildness of the season and the locale of the study on hay fever patients we feel that this enthusiastic report constitutes a hazardous opinion. Brown and his co-workers (64) of Boston also felt that chlorcyclizine was the most effective of all the antihistamines they had studied.

A report of the Committee on Therapy of the American Academy of Allergy (99) summarized the findings for 588 patients treated by nine members, representing New York, Detroit, St. Louis, Baltimore, San Diego, Chicago and Buffalo. Relief in hay fever (50 per cent or more) was obtained in 55.5 per cent of 329 patients, while 38.4 per cent of 130 patients with nonseasonal rhinitis were benefited. The incidence of improvement in asthma was 12.8 per cent. The duration of action of this drug varied, but in a large percentage it was considerably longer than that of other antihistamines. The incidence of side effects was not great, and the average dose was 50 mg. given two to three times daily.

*Chlorothen.*—This is the chlorinated analogue of Thenylene or Histadyl. It is an effective drug in allergic manifestations, but it does not differ materially from other good antihistamines. The usual dose is 50 mg., but often 25 mg. is sufficient. Duration of action is about the same as that of most of the other antihistamines. In the 1947 ragweed and mold season we (176) noted that 70 per cent of 182 patients obtained relief. Of 40 patients with perennial vasomotor rhinitis 62 per cent improved, and of 20 with allergic cough six were benefited. In asthma, improvement was seldom evident. Toxicity is moderate, comparable to that of Pyribenzamine.

*Chlor-Trimeton*.—Introduced in the summer of 1949, this drug is a chlorine analogue of Trimeton, a drug marketed by the same firm for some time. Although there were no published reports of its clinical use at the time of marketing, much was claimed for Chlor-Trimeton by the manufacturer because it is more potent milligram for milligram than any other antihistamine. This is true, the effective dose being 4–8 mg. However, our experience indicates that in these doses it is no more, and probably less, potent than some of the other antihistamines in larger doses. In larger doses the same difficulties arise with Chlor-Trimeton as with the other drugs; for example, 12 mg. is rarely tolerated well. Thus, the advantage of the small dose effectiveness becomes a benefit only to the producer since the consumer rarely considers milligrams—he takes pills, and they are all about the same and all about equal in cost.

Eisenstadt (149) reported that this drug used as adjunct therapy to desensitization gave relief to 51 of 60 hay fever patients. It also helped nine of 13 patients with perennial allergic rhinitis.

The Committee on Therapy of the Academy of Allergy (99) tabulated combined experience of 11 members who treated a total of 990 patients with Chlor-Trimeton. The localities represented included New York, Baltimore, Boston, Detroit, Chicago, St. Louis, Omaha, San Diego and Buffalo. Of 715 patients with hay fever 61.3 per cent showed improvement (50 per cent or more). Among 151 patients with perennial rhinitis 52.5 per cent were benefited. In asthma the incidence of relief was 24.6 per cent. Duration of effect



was about the same as that with other drugs. Moderate to severe side effects were noted in 7.5 per cent of patients, although a much larger percentage experienced mild untoward symptoms. The usual dose was 2–4 mg. given three or four times daily. Larger doses offered little advantage.

*Decapryn.*—This is a potent antihistamine, both in therapeutic effectiveness and sedative action. The average therapeutic dose is 25 mg., although some patients require as little as 12.5 mg. while others need 50 mg. or even more. In these doses we (183) found that 75 per cent of hay fever patients in the Chicago area, most of whom had the ragweed or mold type, were benefited during the 1947 season. In perennial rhinitis 19 of 34 were helped. Although the incidence of good results with Decapryn in our experience has been no greater than that with several other good antihistamines, the drug is sufficiently different from many others to select it for use when others fail. This is particularly true when decided sedative action is desirable.

Sheldon and his associates (499) administered Decapryn to 84 hay fever patients and found it effective, particularly for the sneezing symptoms. Wheezing was satisfactorily controlled in more than half the cases. The doses varied from 6.5 to 100 mg. In 140 patients with clinical allergy Brown *et al.* (65) used doses of 12.5–25 mg. and of 50 mg. in some. In asthma, 27 of 41 were benefited.

*Diatrin.*—Little has been published on clinical results with this drug. Our own limited experience with Diatrin indicates that it is a moderately effective drug but has

no outstanding advantage. The average dose is 50 mg.

*Di-Paralene*.—See chlorcyclizine.

*Histadyl*.—This drug is also marketed by another pharmaceutical house under the name of Thenylene. It is a potent drug, behaving in most respects like other good antihistamines. The usual dose is 50 mg., but not infrequently 100 mg. doses are required. The duration of action and the incidence of side effects are comparable to those for Pyribenzamine. This drug was presented to us several years ago for experimental and clinical trial by two pharmaceutical houses, neither of which was aware that the other had developed it. We had an opportunity to make early observations, and in the summer of 1947 we (182) noted that the drug benefited 70 per cent of 112 patients with hay fever, including patients sensitive to the pollens of trees, grasses, rag-weeds and to molds. In 95 patients in the perennial vasomotor rhinitis group, the incidence of relief was 46 per cent. Allergic cough was frequently benefited.

Of 77 patients who received daily doses of 50–400 mg. of the drug, for periods varying from one day to three months, Peirce and Mothersill (418) (Indianapolis) noted relief in 18 of 21 hay fever patients. The Friedlaenders (202) also observed good results in hay fever and in perennial vasomotor rhinitis in Detroit. Schwartz and his co-workers (483) of New York City reported relief in 76.9 per cent of hay fever patients and in 53.9 per cent of patients with chronic nasal allergy.

*Hydryllin*.—This is not another antihistamine but a combination of Benadryl and aminophylline. The use of combinations of antihistamines with other drugs such as



ephedrine and aminophylline will be discussed in Chapter 9.

*Neo-Antergan*.—This drug is effective in nasal allergy but, in our experience, not quite as effective as Pyribenzamine (34). The side reactions are moderate, although there is considerable tendency to gastrointestinal irritation. The customary dose is 50–100 mg. Neo-Antergan is marketed both in Europe and in this country and was first marketed in France.

Our laboratory and clinical experience with this compound began in 1945, when through the kindness of Dr. Bernard Halpern of Paris and the Rhone-Poulenc Company we received a generous supply. There have been a number of reports, experimental and clinical, on this compound, emanating particularly from Europe but recently also from American sources. Decourt (123) found that Neo-Antergan was more effective and less toxic than Antergan. Southwell (510) found it very good in 15 hay fever cases (England) but obtained no benefit in 25 cases of asthma. In a comparison of Pyribenzamine, Neo-Antergan and Benadryl, we (34) found Neo-Antergan second in effectiveness. Loveless and Dworin (360) reviewed the literature on the therapeutic and toxic action of a number of antihistamines, averaging the results of all investigators, and found that Neo-Antergan stood in about the middle of the list. They then called attention to the dangers of such an evaluation since the standards and interpretations differ with each worker. They compared the findings in 113 of their own patients and found that while Pyribenzamine and Trimeton were at the top of the list, Neo-

Antergan was of good but lesser potency in their series.

*Neohetramine*.—This is one of the two least potent of all marketed antihistamines. With 50–100 mg. doses we (32) obtained a fair incidence of relief in hay fever, but the degree of relief was not as good as that with many other drugs. The main advantage of this compound is the low incidence of side effects, the incidence being only 16 per cent with 100 mg. doses. We feel that for full therapeutic results doses larger than 100 mg. would have to be used, and with larger doses toxicity may be as high or higher than it is with some other antihistamines. Our recommendation is that the use of this drug be confined to those patients who do not tolerate most of the antihistamines but do respond to small or moderate doses of Neohetramine.

The Friedlaenders (207) of Detroit used doses of 50 or 100 mg., more often the latter, and obtained effect in 64 per cent of hay fever patients and in 52 per cent of patients with perennial rhinitis. Crip and Aaron (108) in Pittsburgh claimed that in allergic rhinitis Neohetramine was effective in 80 per cent of patients, while in seasonal hay fever they found it effective "in the same percentage that Feinberg obtained with Pyribenzamine." Needless to say, such comparisons are invalid. Feinberg tried Pyribenzamine in one season in Chicago while Crip and Aaron tried Neohetramine in another season in Pittsburgh. The standards of a classifiable "good" result may differ with the two observers. Indeed, when Feinberg compared Neohetramine with Pyribenzamine in the same practice, in the same locality, in the same patients, using the same gradation of



results, the effectiveness of Neohetramine was considerably inferior to that of Pyribenzamine and several other antihistamines. Waldbott and Borden (556) of Detroit obtained 38 per cent good results in 165 hay fever patients, while 17 per cent of 75 patients with asthma were benefited.

*Perazil*.—See chlorcyclizine.

*Phenergan*.—This is an interesting antihistamine which is only now being marketed in this country. Through the kindness of Dr. Halpern and the Rhone-Poulenc Company of France we obtained a substantial quantity of this compound several years ago and made rather complete laboratory studies and some clinical trials with it. This antihistamine has distinct individual characteristics. It is highly sedative, perhaps the most sedative of all the clinically used antihistamines. Therapeutically it is very effective, but its sedative action frequently limits its use in large doses or even in moderate doses in ambulatory patients. Another feature of this drug is its prolonged action. We found it most useful in those patients in whom a bedtime dose would often be sufficient to prevent morning symptoms of nasal allergy. In many instances one daily dose was sufficient. Because of our limited supply of the drug we have confined its use to special cases. It is possible that a more thorough clinical trial would elicit further desirable qualities of this drug, but at any rate it is handicapped for general use by the tendency to pronounced sedation. The dose we have used most often is 25 mg.

Halpern and Hamburger (254) reported that of 142 patients with hay fever (in France), 98 were totally re-

lieved and 36 were partially benefited. Of nine patients with definitely demonstrable allergic factors, all were relieved, while of 63 other patients with asthma 21 showed some degree of improvement. A dose of 25 mg. was administered one to four times daily. Vallery-Radot, Hamburger and Halpern (550) further reported that this drug is more effective than most antihistamines. They found it particularly effective in infantile asthma. In interpreting statements of comparative clinical results made by European therapists one should recall that these clinicians have not had the wide range of American drugs with which to make comparisons.

*Pyribenzamine*.—This was the second drug introduced for clinical use in this country and has proved to be one of the most dependable and popular. In our early experience with it, we (174, 175, 186) found it highly effective in seasonal hay fever and perennial vasomotor rhinitis. In the first season (1946) effective results were obtained in about 83 per cent of a group of 254 hay fever patients and in 64 per cent of a group of 130 patients with chronic rhinitis (175). Although in subsequent, more severe seasons and with perhaps more critical standards of measurement the percentages were not quite as high, Pyribenzamine has remained one of the most effective and useful drugs. The index of sedation is moderate. The duration of action is usually three to six hours and the average effective dose is 50 mg. In severe cases we have used as much as 150 or 200 mg. at a time, but in such instances the patient should be under close supervision by the physician. In many patients 25 mg. doses will suffice. We have also had effective results



using Pyribenzamine in the form of nasal spray in some cases of resistant nasal allergy. An aerosol of Pyribenzamine has been helpful in some cases of asthma.

Arbesman and his collaborators (17) obtained improvement in 75 per cent of patients with all types of allergic rhinitis and in 85 per cent of seasonal hay fever patients. They also claimed results in 47 per cent of 159 asthmatics (14). They concluded that Pyribenzamine was more effective and less toxic than Benadryl. Bernstein, Rose and Feinberg (34) in a comparative study of Benadryl, Neo-Antergan and Pyribenzamine found Pyribenzamine the most effective. Loveless and Dworin (360), in a comparative study of several drugs, found Pyribenzamine and Trimeton the most effective. In analyzing their results with Pyribenzamine and Benadryl, Engelsher (155) and Ratner (434) concluded that the value of the antihistaminic drugs has been overestimated. We concur in general with their statements but feel that Engelsher's claim of relief in only one third of his hay fever patients is at variance with our experience and that of most allergists.

*Pyrrolazote*.—This drug has good clinical potency. In two series of hay fever patients of all types in the 1948 and 1949 seasons, 63 per cent of the 174 patients obtained symptomatic relief. The usual dose is 50 mg., and with this dose side effects are moderate. However, for the 100 mg. dose side effects were frequent and often severe. The results in asthma were negligible. In vasomotor rhinitis the incidence of effective results was 54 per cent.

*Tagathen*.—See chlorothen.

*Thenylene*.—See Histadyl.

*Thephorin*.—The characteristics of this drug differ in many respects from those of most other antihistamines. In the first place, the chemical structure is a departure from that of most of the other drugs. Secondly, the most characteristic side action with moderate doses is excitation rather than sedation. The drug is moderately effective in nasal allergy, but in our experience the incidence and degree of effectiveness do not compare favorably with those of some other antihistamines. Its chief advantage being its tendency to be free of sedative effect, it is most useful in patients who are easily sedated by other antihistamines. Contrary to some claims, however, undesirable effects occur just as often with Thephorin as with some other antihistaminic drugs; the most characteristic are nausea and vomiting, nervousness and palpitation. In moderate allergy the drug is often useful, but in severe cases in which large doses of antihistamines are required, toleration is usually not good.

Several reports describe a rather high order of effectiveness. Cohen and his collaborators (95) (Madison, Wis.) obtained results in 68 per cent of asthma cases and in 90 per cent of cases of allergic rhinitis. Levin and Moss (336) (Detroit), in studying allergic children, found that 75 per cent had results in asthma and 81 per cent in hay fever. Crip and Aaron (109) obtained an incidence of 76 per cent relief in hay fever and 27 per cent in asthma. On the other hand, Gelfand (223) of New York noted that only 45 per cent obtained results in seasonal hay fever and 38 per cent in perennial allergic rhinitis. However, in 22 patients with



asthma 13 obtained benefit. Sternberg and Gottesman (520) observed relief in only 18 of 41 hay fever patients, four of 26 asthma patients, and none of six patients with perennial vasomotor rhinitis.

*Trimeton*.—Our experience with Trimeton indicates that it is an effective antihistamine. The early claims that it is the most effective and least toxic antihistamine have not been in agreement with our observations. As a matter of fact, we have had more complaints of sedation from therapeutically effective doses of Trimeton than we had from Pyribenzamine and other potent antihistamines. The usual effective dose is 25–50 mg., although a large percentage of patients do not tolerate the higher dose. We have never used Trimeton in doses comparable to those of Pyribenzamine used in severe allergic syndromes, because it was our feeling that tolerance would be poor.

Brown (63) (Boston) reported relief with this drug in 90 per cent of hay fever patients and in 80 per cent of patients with mild intrinsic asthma. In three other reports (232, 479, 580), each of which tabulates a group of from 15 to 34 hay fever patients, relief was observed in from 66 to 90 per cent. Loveless and Dworin (360) found that Trimeton compared favorably with Pyribenzamine in their study. The Committee on Therapy of the American Academy of Allergy (98) reported tabulated results from a number of investigators and stated that Trimeton "compares very favorably with the other antihistamines on the market." In a total of 908 hay fever patients 65 per cent had good or excellent results. Of 956 patients with perennial vasomotor rhinitis,

51 per cent were improved, and of 685 patients with asthma 25 per cent were benefited. We are omitting the results classified as "fair," since such results can be regarded as questionable.

194B (*White*).—This compound has not been marketed. We found it moderately effective and particularly useful because it has a low incidence and degree of sedation. In side actions it resembles Antistine and Neohetramine, but has the advantage of greater therapeutic effect. In the 1948 hay fever season we (33) observed relief in 64 per cent of a series of 148 cases. Of 37 patients with perennial vasomotor rhinitis, 15 were benefited. As with other antihistamines an effect in asthma was seldom obtained.

*p*-Fluorobenzyl-DPE (*Lederle*).—This compound, also unmarketed, is actually a fluorine analogue of Pyribenzamine. The chemical alteration has apparently increased the potency, so that experimentally we have found this compound approximately twice as potent as Pyribenzamine (178). In 30 mg. doses it is usually as effective as 50 mg. of most antihistamines. In side actions it compares favorably with most antihistamines, although we have the impression that with very large doses the sedative effects would be greater than those with Pyribenzamine or Thenylene. We have found it useful in some stubborn cases in which response to other antihistamines was poor.



## CHAPTER 7

# Dermatoses

THE USE OF the antihistaminic drugs in dermatology came soon after drugs, nontoxic enough to be used in man, were available. Early reports on Antergan (80, 215) in urticaria and pruritus were encouraging. As clinical reports have accumulated, the role of these agents has become better defined. Probably the most important and one of the most constant effects of the drugs in lesions of the skin is the antipruritic effect. Many lesions are improved because the patient no longer scratches and causes secondary irritation and infection. Differences between the various drugs are not great, provided the proper dosage is used and this dosage is tolerated.

### URTICARIA AND ANGIONEUROTIC EDEMA

Urticaria has probably been alleviated to a greater extent by these drugs than has any other disease. Drug therapy before the advent of these compounds was seldom satisfactory. In 1942 Antergan (80, 215) was shown to be quite effective in treatment, but knowledge

of these results was slow to reach this country. The first American reports of the clinical use of antihistamines dealt with urticaria (114, 115). Eighteen patients were treated, and in 11 there was complete disappearance of urticaria when 50 mg. of Benadryl was taken two to three times a day. In three of the patients 100 mg. four times a day gave improvement, while four received no relief. It was noted that while under treatment a nonpruritic wheal appeared at times.

Generally speaking, acute urticaria responds better to the antihistamines than does the chronic type. The effective dose of the antihistamine depends largely on the severity of the urticarial dermatosis. The mild cases usually respond well to 50 mg. doses of Pyribenzamine, whereas the severe ones, particularly those associated with deep lesions, require 100–200 mg. per dose, or the equivalent of other antihistamines. The duration of effect from each dose also varies with the severity of the syndrome as well as with the size of the dose. Thus, in very severe cases, the effect frequently lasts only two to three hours after each administration. In a large percentage of cases, cyclic fluctuations in the urticarial lesions occur; hence the actual effectiveness and its duration must be interpreted with great care. The itching is most often the manifestation which is relieved, whereas the edema is more resistant to the drug. However, even though the preformed edematous areas are affected very little by the antihistamine, repeated use of the drug may limit the degree of edema and erythema in new lesions.

Angioneurotic edema is closely related to urticaria and may be regarded as an anatomic variant of the same



manifestation. Indeed, lesions of both urticaria and angioneurotic edema are often present in the same patient at different times or at the same time. Angioneurotic edema shows a slower and less complete response to the antihistamines, primarily because itching is not a factor and because the edema is more infiltrative and is apt to involve muscles and joints. Larger doses are often required, and other therapy may have to be administered in addition to the antihistamine. For edema in vital areas, such as the larynx, vasoconstrictors, particularly epinephrine given hypodermically, are still the therapies of choice.

Morbilliform, erythematous and similar itching rashes, often due to drugs, respond favorably to the antihistamines.

Antistine, as reported by Friedlaender and Friedlaender (201), helped 10 of 20 patients with urticaria. Less than half as many side effects were noted with Antistine, compared with Pyribenzamine. Schindler (480) and Overton (414) obtained very good results using Antistine. This drug generally produces fewer side effects than others in equivalent doses, but if the dose is increased to give equal therapeutic results, the incidence of side effects also increases. We use this drug when the patient is not able to tolerate the more potent drugs.

In 1945, we (185) reported that relief was obtained in urticaria using Benadryl orally. O'Leary and Farber (409) found that of 35 patients with acute urticaria, 20 were completely relieved, 12 were improved and three were not affected. Forty-eight of 75 patients with chronic urticaria had relief; there were 10 complete failures in

this group. Sixteen of 20 of Waldbott's (555) cases responded to Benadryl, as did 12 of 14 of Eyermann's (162). Other reports indicate that roughly 80–90 per cent of patients with acute or chronic urticaria can be benefited by Benadryl (361, 366, 463, 511). This drug would be satisfactory for most cases of urticaria except for the fact that it causes a high incidence of sedation. However, this sedative action can be of advantage if Benadryl is used at night and another, less sedative, drug is used during the day.

Using chlorcyclizine (Perazil, Di-Paralene), Jaros (288) claimed that all of seven cases of urticaria were improved. Our results (179) do not quite compare with these. We found that four of seven patients were relieved. The relatively infrequent side effects and the definitely prolonged action of this drug often makes it the most desirable drug for patients who respond well to it. Often the medication need be taken only twice a day, for instance in the morning and at bedtime.

The report of the Committee on Therapy of the American Academy of Allergy (99) stated that 70 per cent of 63 patients obtained 50 per cent or more relief using Chlor-Trimeton for urticaria.

Histadyl (Thenylene) was effective in 16 of 22 patients in one series (418). In another (483), 66.6 per cent of those with chronic urticaria and 80 per cent of those with acute urticaria were relieved. We also have found this drug to be effective (182). Hunter (279) noted that Neo-Antergan in daily doses of 300–800 mg. was effective. He observed no increase in tolerance for the drug during three months of treatment. Waldbott



and Borden (556) treated 21 patients with Neohetramine, relieving 12. Again, as with Antistine, the incidence of side effects with Neohetramine is low, although the potency is also low.

Halpern and Hamburger (254) used Phenergan in 123 patients with urticaria and obtained relief in 88 per cent of the group. Dosage was 25 mg. one to four times daily. We find this drug is highly potent and has a longer duration of action than most others, but the high incidence of side effects even at fairly low dosage precludes its routine use. Given at bedtime it may constitute desirable antihistamine medication.

Arbesman and his associates (17) were the first to use Pyribenzamine clinically. In 154 patients with urticaria 83 per cent were helped. Our results (186) were similar. Twenty-three of 24 patients were relieved by Osborne and associates (412) whereas Baer and Sulzberger (22) noted relief in only 50 per cent of patients. We find Pyribenzamine to be one of the more effective drugs in the treatment of this condition. We have frequently observed that failure of response is, in some cases, due to inadequate dosage.

Although extensive clinical reports on its use are lacking, we (176) find chlorothen (Tagathen) to be effective in the treatment of urticaria, ranking among the more potent drugs in the series. Thephorin was highly effective in a series of patients treated by Kesten and Sheard (309). In other series, 60 per cent (109) and 75 per cent (336) of patients obtained relief. The advantage of this drug is that it produces less sedation than many of the other drugs, although other side ef-

fects are often present and we have found it to be less potent than some of the other preparations. Trimeton has received a fairly extensive clinical trial. Brown (63) noted that 81 per cent of his patients were relieved; Goldman (232) had results in eight of nine and Schiller and Lowell (479) in 12 of 12 patients. In the report of the Committee on Therapy of the American Academy of Allergy (98) a tabulation of the results of a number of investigators showed that Trimeton gave good or excellent results in 65 per cent of 281 cases of urticaria and angioneurotic edema.

The choice of a particular drug by the physician for treatment of the patient with urticaria depends on several considerations. A drug such as chlorcyclizine might be chosen because of its prolonged action. Antistine or Neohetramine might be chosen because of the low incidence of side effects. Pyribenzamine, chlorothen (Tagathen) or Histadyl (Thenylene) might be chosen for some superiority in effectiveness. We find that one drug will not best suit all patients. If results with one are unsatisfactory, either after a short trial with adequate dosage or because of too great side effects, another drug should be tried. It must be remembered that the most striking effect observed is the effect on the itching; the edema may respond later, or perhaps not at all.

### SERUM SICKNESS SYNDROME

Serum, as well as penicillin, other antibiotics, sulfonamides and other therapeutic or prophylactic agents, not infrequently will produce a syndrome known as serum sickness. This occurs as a rule about 10 days after the



administration of the agent and commonly consists of an itching rash, urticaria and angioneurotic edema, arthralgia with or without evidently swollen joints and fever. Albuminuria is not unusual and more serious renal, vascular or nervous system lesions may be present at times. The antihistamines will benefit most patients with serum type reactions. The itching and urticaria are helped most; the joint manifestations are usually more resistant. The fever may also be modified but is not consistently affected. The arthralgia and fever can usually be relieved with salicylates (80, 308, 550). Small doses of the antihistamines are rarely effective in this syndrome, and most treatment failures result from inadequate dosage. Usually not less than 100 mg. of Pyribenzamine given approximately every four hours is required, and the very severe cases may require 150–200 mg. quantities. Sometimes oral medication fails because of poor absorption; in such cases the antihistamine may be given parenterally.

It is important to bear in mind that, as in other allergic manifestations, the effect of the antihistamines is palliative only. The best that can be expected from these drugs is comfort for the patient and control of the disease. As soon as the drugs are discontinued the manifestations recur, until such time as the natural evolution of the disease has caused its termination. On the average, "serum sickness" will last from a few days to two or three weeks with or without medication. In some instances the syndrome lasts a month or more; in others it may persist for several months in modified form. It is not certain what the mechanism of the persistence of the

urticarial lesions is in these cases, but most probably the persistence is due either to the initiation of other allergies or to a conditioning of histamine release to stimuli other than antigenic. More serious results of serum reactions may be periarteritis or other collagenous changes. Serum sickness should not be regarded as innocuous, therefore, and should not be provoked by promiscuous use of sulfonamides or penicillin just because of the effective control of the acute symptoms.

It is well also to indicate at this juncture that use of antihistamines during the time penicillin or sulfonamides are administered or during the incubation period of the reaction is without avail. The onset of the syndrome, its severity and course are not the least affected by such therapy. A disadvantage of such antihistaminic, prophylactic treatment is the refractoriness to the drug that may ensue at the time when actual symptomatic relief is desired. For the prevention or treatment of the immediate reaction the antihistamines may be helpful, although as emergency medication epinephrine is far more reliable.

#### DERMOGRAPHISM

Dermographism is essentially urticaria caused by traumatic stimuli, and results of treatment with the antihistamines are similar to those in urticaria. Many cases of mild or moderate dermographism require no treatment. We (185) have found the antihistamines of value in preventing the dermographic response in patients undergoing allergy skin tests. The response to the trauma of needle or knife is obliterated, while the re-



sponse to a reacting antigen is only slightly reduced. Nevertheless, one must bear in mind the possibility that a normally minimal scratch reaction to an antigen might be entirely obliterated under the influence of an antihistamine. The drug chosen to treat dermographism depends on factors previously discussed for urticaria. It is our impression that Benadryl is more effective for this purpose than many other drugs, its advantage possibly being its additional antiacetylcholine action. Drugs described in the literature include Benadryl (185), Tagathen (176), Histadyl (Thenylene) (182), Pyribenzamine (23, 308) and Thephorin (309).

#### ATOPIC DERMATITIS (ECZEMA)

In the treatment of atopic dermatitis, variously known as eczema and neurodermatitis, the antihistamines have not been as satisfactory as they have been in the urticarial dermatoses. They are of considerable help in the management of this disorder, but seldom do they cause complete regression and in many patients no relief whatever is obtained. The principal action of the drugs seems to be the ability to alleviate pruritus. However, when this is accomplished and scratching is minimized, secondary infection and traumatic injury clear up more rapidly and the lesions become less disfiguring. Sometimes this makes it easier to discover the etiology, because the lesions regress more readily when the etiologic factor is eliminated and irritation from scratching is absent. Certainly other factors in the treatment of atopic dermatitis must not be overlooked in favor of the antihistamines if the results are to be satisfactory.

This is one condition in which it is particularly advantageous to use one of the more sedative drugs, especially at night, for the patient is usually a restless sleeper and scratches unconsciously. Also, we prefer to avoid other sedatives, especially the barbiturates, since they lose their effect on prolonged use and may produce sensitization in this type of patient. Long-acting or enteric-coated drugs also have a place in therapy for similar reasons.

As with urticaria, reports on the use of practically all the antihistamines in atopic dermatitis or eczema have appeared. Antergan was used in 1942 with good results (125, 215). Antistine was also reported to be effective (198, 293). Benadryl relieved itching in eight of 25 patients in a group studied by O'Leary and Farber (409), and Goldberg (231) found that the dermatitis improved subjectively but not objectively. Levin (334) reported results in 50–75 per cent of his cases; McGavack, Elias and Boyd (366) found that three of six patients benefited, but Loveless and Brown (359) and Lynch (361) obtained no improvement with Benadryl.

Using chlorcyclizine (Di-Paralene, Perazil), Jaros (288) reported all of eight patients improved, while we (179) found that only four of 11 patients were helped. Members of the Committee on Therapy of the American Academy of Allergy (99) found chlorcyclizine to give 50 per cent or more relief in 47 per cent of 17 cases of atopic dermatitis. The same group, using Chlor-Trimeton, had 50 per cent or better results in 73 per cent of 15 cases. Even though these drugs were tested by some of the same clinicians, conclusive com-



parisons should not be made, because the number of patients is too small to give significant results.

Schwartz, Levin and Wallman (483), reporting on the use of Histadyl (Thenylene), stated that 50 per cent of their patients with allergic eczema benefited. Marin, Foisy and LeClerc (379) treated 13 patients with Neo-Antergan for one to two months and found this drug to be of little value. Phenergan, used by Halpern and Hamburger (254), relieved pruritus to some extent in a few of 17 patients with chronic eczema.

Pyribenzamine was of practically no value in the treatment of atopic dermatitis, according to Baer and Sulzberger (22). We (186) obtained relief of the pruritus associated with the atopic dermatitis. Using Pyribenzamine orally, 100-400 mg. daily, Osborne *et al.* (412) relieved the pruritus about 50 per cent in 19 of 30 patients. Kesten (308) helped 27 of 40 patients. In 1947 we (181) reported on the use of a 2 per cent ointment of Pyribenzamine to relieve the itching of atopic dermatitis and other conditions. This ointment may be used provided the area to be treated is not great, for absorption does take place and overdosage is possible; furthermore, treatment of a large surface area is not practical in ambulatory patients. The use of such an ointment, with or without the simultaneous use of an oral preparation, gives relief to a large percentage of our patients. Sulzberger, Baer and Levin (530) found no beneficial effects from ointments in this disease. (For further discussion of topical application see Chapter 9.)

We (176) have found chlorothen (Tagathen), given orally, to be fairly effective in this condition.

Kesten and Sheard (309) used Thephorin for 15 patients; seven were relieved. Woolridge and Joseph (582) used Thephorin orally and locally in 23 cases of acute and chronic disseminated neurodermatitis. Two patients had complete clearing of the lesion, and 15 showed at least 50 per cent improvement. Five had little benefit and one became worse. In contrast, D'Avanzo (121) found Thephorin ointment to be of little use in this condition.

The Committee on Therapy of the American Academy of Allergy (98) found Trimeton to give good to excellent results in 33 per cent of 74 cases of eczema. We (178) have found that p-fluorobenzyl-DPE was effective in five of 10 patients with atopic dermatitis.

### CONTACT DERMATITIS

The treatment of contact dermatitis with antihistamines has been only partly successful. Results are based chiefly on relief of the pruritus; the effect on the lesions is less noticeable. The most important factor in the treatment of this entity still consists in the removal of the etiologic agent. Because the lesions are usually localized, the use of topical preparations of the antihistamines is more feasible, providing the drugs are not too irritating. Topical preparations are best used in the chronic dry form rather than in the acute weeping form in which there is danger of aggravating the inflammation. In any topical application of an antihistamine a good procedure is to confine the first application to a small area in order to observe any possible deleterious effect. Early reports (361, 409) on oral use of



Benadryl indicated that this drug is unsatisfactory in the treatment of contact dermatitis. However, McGavack *et al.* (367), who applied Benadryl topically in a 2-5 per cent ointment, reported that 20 of 25 patients with poison ivy obtained complete relief and five improved. Rosenberg and Blumenthal (463), using Benadryl intravenously, were able to relieve the pruritus of four patients with poison ivy.

The report of the Committee on Therapy of the American Academy of Allergy (99) showed that chlorcyclizine did not help two patients with contact dermatitis but that Chlor-Trimeton gave 50 per cent or more relief in 11 of 15 patients. Histadyl (483) and Neohetramine (207) have also been reported to give some relief in this condition.

Pyribenzamine failed to influence the symptoms or lesions when given orally in one series of 15 patients (412). Sulzberger *et al.* (530) found Pyribenzamine cream to be effective in only a small minority of cases of contact dermatitis. In artificially induced poison ivy, Tweedall and O'Connor (542) found that Pyribenzamine given orally did not prevent the dermatitis and only moderately relieved the itching and burning. The Committee on Therapy of the American Academy of Allergy (98) observed that Trimeton was effective (good and excellent results) in only 18 per cent of 17 cases of contact dermatitis.

### PRURITUS

The effect of the antihistamines on pruritus has been discussed in relation to the various disease entities con-

sidered in this chapter. Many other dermatologic lesions cause itching, and in most of them the drugs have been used, with variable results.

Pruritus ani and vulvae were mentioned by Gaté and her co-workers (215) as responding well to Antergan. We (186) obtained some good results using Pyribenzamine orally but soon found (181) that in some patients local therapy with Pyribenzamine in the form of a 2 per cent ointment was more effective. Layman and Schmid (324) observed that Thephorin ointment was also effective. Only a few of the patients treated with Pyribenzamine ointment by Sulzberger *et al.* (530) obtained good results. The same authors obtained very good results in treatment of lichen simplex chronicus.

Dermatitis herpetiformis responded to Pyribenzamine in one series (412), whereas another report (361) stated that Benadryl failed to help two patients with this condition.

Local application of Benadryl ointment relieved the itching in three patients with psoriasis and one with pityriasis rosea (367). Goldberg (231) had varying success using Benadryl to treat the pruritus associated with seborrheic dermatitis, pityriasis rosea dermatophytosis with "id" reactions, miliaria, exfoliative dermatitis, insect bites and postscabetic pruritus. Kesten and Sheard (309) used Thephorin to relieve the pruritus in patients with erythema multiforme, lichen chronicus circumscriptus and localized amyloidosis.

Hunter and Dunlop (280) using Neo-Antergan, obtained striking relief of pruritus caused by jaundice. Some



of our patients with this type of pruritus have been helped, but others responded poorly. Good results using Pyribenzamine to treat the pruritus of chickenpox have been reported by Silverman (504).

## CHAPTER 8

# Miscellaneous Manifestations

IT WAS TO be expected that with the advent of a series of drugs as potent as the antihistamines the physician and research worker would be tempted to try them in a great variety of diseases. Their use in manifestations definitely known to be on a basis of hypersensitivity, such as hay fever, asthma and anaphylaxis, came early. Treatment was later attempted in diseases in some of which the concept of an allergic etiology is still debatable. This was done for the purpose of procuring relief and also in an attempt to prove the allergic status of the disease. Naturally, since the mechanism of the antihistamines is to inhibit the action of histamine on the shock organs, these drugs were tried in the many diseases in which histamine plays or is thought to play a part. Since the drugs also have other actions, they have been used in a wide variety of other symptoms and diseases.

### ALLERGY TO INJECTED AGENTS

Local and generalized hypersensitivity to injected therapeutic agents has been treated with various anti-



histamines with partial to complete relief of symptoms. In 1946, Gastineau and Leavitt (214) reported the use of Benadryl to treat urticaria and angioneurotic edema caused by insulin in a diabetic who was sensitive to insulin. The urticaria was controlled by oral administration of 250–350 mg. of Benadryl, but the angioneurotic edema persisted. Later, the same authors (325) suggested combining the Benadryl with the insulin before injection. Carryer and Koelsche (78) gave Benadryl orally to help accomplish rapid desensitization to liver extract in several cases of allergy to the latter. Hunter and Dunlop (281) also reported the use of antihistamines in treatment of sensitivity to liver extract and insulin.

The use of the antihistamines to prevent local and constitutional reactions in patients undergoing specific desensitization therapy for hay fever or other allergic manifestations deserves some comment. This procedure is rarely indicated and should be used only in those patients in whom constitutional reactions frequently occur. Only moderate increments in the dose of the desensitizing antigen should be made, since large increments, such as double or triple the dose, may result in serious reactions despite use of the antihistamine. As a rule, the best time to administer the drug orally for this purpose is one hour before the injection of the antigen.

### DISEASES OF THE EYE

The use of these drugs in the treatment of diseases of the eye of known allergic etiology has been generally satisfactory. Oral administration is often useful in cases

of itching and lacrimation associated with seasonal hay fever, but at times topical application is necessary. Bourquin (47) reported in 1946 on the use of Antistine solution locally in cases of allergic conjunctivitis and palpebral eczema. He also obtained symptomatic relief in some cases of chronic conjunctivitis, phlyctenular conjunctivitis, nonbacterial conjunctivitis, keratoconjunctivitis, scleritis, iridocyclitis, Reiter's syndrome and other eye conditions in which etiology is obscure, unknown or known and not related to allergy. Harris, McGavack and Elias (265) found that whereas the oral use of Benadryl had no effect on pupillary size in 20 subjects, topical application of a 0.5 per cent solution caused an atropine-like dilatation of the pupil in 48 of 60 subjects, decreasing visual acuity in 12. These findings create a valid objection to the use of this particular drug in the eye.

Hurwitz (282) reported on the use of Antistine locally in ocular allergy. Eighty-four per cent of 50 patients experienced subjective symptomatic improvement, the greatest benefit occurring in ragweed hay fever patients. Leopold, Dean and Blazar (333) found that in rabbits with experimental anaphylactic uveitis, Pyribenzamine given systemically before the challenging dose prevented the reaction, but if given after or at the same time, it failed to prevent the reaction. They believed that this indicates that Pyribenzamine may be useful in the prevention of human sympathetic ophthalmia and of endophthalmitis phacoanaphylactica.

Daily and Daily (116) used a combination of 0.5 per cent Antistine and 0.025 per cent Privine in 100



patients with various types of conjunctivitis. Relief from burning, itching, photophobia and lacrimation was obtained. Stocker (522) used Antistine eye drops in 0.25–0.5 per cent concentration and Histadyl drops and ointment in 0.5 per cent concentration. He claimed improvement in cases of allergic dermatitis, blepharitis, conjunctivitis, vernal catarrh, episcleritis, recurrent erosion, iritis, herpes corneae and phlyctenular conjunctivitis.

It must again be emphasized that these drugs are only palliative and that prolonged use may cause irritation or contact sensitivity (401). In some patients, topical use of these drugs in the eye is not possible even initially because of too much irritation.

#### COLLAGEN DISEASES

The findings of Rich and Gregory (444) that periarteritis nodosa is probably due to a hypersensitivity reaction and that lesions resembling rheumatic fever, serum sickness and the collagen diseases could be produced in rabbits by the injection of a foreign protein (443) have stimulated research to find a preventive or curative treatment for these diseases. Both positive and negative results have been claimed by experimenters using antihistaminic drugs. In 1945 Reubi (440) claimed that the antihistamines prevented nephritis ordinarily produced in rabbits by antiserum. Benadryl and another antihistaminic drug were reported by Kyser *et al.* (316) to prevent rheumatic-like lesions in the myocardium of serum-injected rabbits. However, MacGregor and Wood (368), using Neo-Antergan and Benadryl, were unable to reproduce these results. Clinical studies

on the use of these drugs in periarteritis nodosa generally have been without results (281, 361), but in one case recovery was reported (531). Lynch's (361) results were "inconclusive but somewhat encouraging" in lupus erythematosus. Stephens and Holbrook (518) reported good results in two of three patients with disseminated lupus erythematosus using Benadryl. Hunter (281) had two patients with dermatomyositis who were unimproved. Four patients with scleroderma did not respond (409), whereas among nine patients with acrosclerosis, seven obtained some temporary reduction in edema, the effect being sustained in only two. In a small series of patients, treatment of rheumatic fever with these drugs has been a failure (545).

Thus, it is obvious that the status of antihistamines in the treatment of this group of diseases is not very satisfactory. Our own experience in cases of acute rheumatic fever, nephrosis, disseminated lupus erythematosus and periarteritis nodosa has confirmed this. In one patient with dermatomyositis large doses of Pyribenzamine produced temporary improvement in erythema and itching.

### TUBERCULOSIS

The effect of the histamine antagonists on tuberculosis and the tuberculin reaction has been investigated in the guinea pig and in man. In man, at least five reports (110, 209, 238, 306, 549) indicated that there was no effect on the tuberculin reaction, while another report (236) showed a depression of the reaction. Judd and Henderson (291) treated 30 patients with pulmonary and nonpulmonary tuberculosis with Benadryl, Pyri-



benzamine, Thephorin or Neohetramine in daily doses of about 300–400 mg. The results were encouraging, indicated by temperature drop, sputum and improvement in weight, appetite and x-ray findings. Patients who started therapy earliest in the course of the disease obtained the best results. Mantoux reactions were also diminished. Millner and Hurst (396) treated 28 tuberculous patients with Neo-Antergan during the day and Phenergan at night for a period of several months. The results, assessed by x-ray, sputum volume, sedimentation rate and weight, were not striking, although some benefit might have been present, possibly owing to the atropine-like and sedative actions of the drugs. Certainly we might conclude that the value of these drugs in the therapy of tuberculosis is far from proved and that much larger series of cases must be observed.

### THE COMMON COLD

The promotion of the antihistamines in the treatment of the common cold and the permission granted by the Food and Drug Administration for over-the-counter sale of several of the antihistamines have resulted in extensive claims in lay advertising. The quantities of the antihistamines used in colds have already exceeded those used in allergic conditions (513). Since the promiscuous and unsupervised use of these drugs is bound to result in many serious toxic effects and accidents, it becomes necessary to examine the evidence on which the claims for their employment is based.

*Basis for trial of antihistamines in colds.*—The circumstances which have suggested the use of these drugs

in treatment of the common cold are several. Since rhinorrhea and sneezing are symptoms common to both allergic rhinitis and colds, it was but natural to suppose that these symptoms in colds also were on an allergic basis or, at any rate, that they might respond to the antihistamines. Another pertinent basis rests on the claim that in some stages of virus infection in colds allergy plays a prominent role (196a). Most authorities in the field are not willing to agree on the role of allergy as an important feature in the common cold. Even if allergy to virus does play a part it does not necessarily signify that antihistamines will ameliorate that type of allergy. Indeed it has been definitely shown that the allergic manifestations of bacterial or other infectious disease are not helped by the antihistamines. This can readily be explained by the fact that histamine does not play a significant role in this type of allergy.

The finding of histamine in the nasal secretions of the common cold by Troescher-Elam, Ancona and Kerr (541) is often quoted in support of the allergic mechanism of colds. These workers made bioassays of the histamine of the nasal secretions in a small series of patients with colds and found that the quantities of histamine were about the same as those in allergic rhinitis. The technic of their method of dropping the extracted solution on the intestinal strip instead of in a bath is open to criticism. The amounts of histamine found were not excessively large. It is even possible that similar quantities might be found in normal nasal secretions if such controls were used. The findings of these workers have not been substantiated.



Perhaps the most impelling basis for the interest in the antihistamines in the common cold is a commercial one. A \$100,000,000 annual business (513) constitutes more than a minor temptation. Commercial interests were quick to appreciate the prospective market, especially in view of the fact that it has been definitely established that from 25 to 50 per cent of the population honestly believe that placebo tablets have been instrumental in stopping their colds.

*Claims for successful treatment of colds.*—Brewster was the first to present a series of patients whose colds had been treated with antihistamines. In his several studies (56–59), using Pyribenzamine, Thenylene, Neo-Antergan, Histadyl and Benadryl, he claimed that these drugs aborted the common cold in a high percentage of subjects, provided they were taken in the first few hours of symptoms. For the most part the patient made the diagnosis and very few control cases or placebo administrations were employed. Murray's (403) good results were also based on a diagnosis by the patient. Gordon (234) likewise claimed success in the treatment of colds with antihistamines and his criterion of a cold was the procurement of a negative culture.

The study of Arminio and Sweet (20) was more thorough. Both prophylactic and treatment studies were made. In the prophylactic group 300 subjects were given 50 mg. of Neohetramine one to three times daily. Another group of 300 were given no antihistamines. Of the control group 19.7 per cent were free from colds, while of the antihistamine group 88 per cent were cold-free during the period of October to April. In the treat-

ment studies, a group composed of 104 patients received antihistamines, while 106 received placebos. The authors stated that "of the subjects who began treatment during the first 48 hours after the onset of symptoms, 100 per cent responded to therapy." The finding of eosinophils in nasal smears of a large percentage of these patients suggests the possibility that many of these "colds" were instances of allergic rhinitis.

Middleton and Rider (394) treated the colds of 63 medical students and nurses with Neo-Antergan or Thephorin, while 29 were given placebos. Only seven colds were stopped within 12 hours. Symptomatic benefit was attained in 76 per cent of the antihistamine-treated group and in 45 per cent of the placebo-treated.

The active or prophylactic treatment of colds with various antihistamines in large series of subjects was reported on favorably by Kessler (307), Tebrock (536) and Phillips and Fishbein (427). In none of these studies is there any clear evidence that conclusive criteria were used to prove that the syndromes treated were colds.

The bulk of the reports mentioned are lacking in one or more of criteria which would make the results significant. The majority have actually failed to separate the true cold from frequent vasomotor disturbances dependent on allergic or nonspecific factors. It is a common observation that a preponderance of nasal episodes regarded by the patient at first as a cold disappear in a few hours, either because they were nasal disturbances due to chilling, exposure and other influences, or because they were due to allergy. If treated early such "colds" will show a large percentage of "cures." Most of the re-



ports do not indicate proper control series and placebo therapy. Few of them, either by history or observation, have taken cognizance of the possibility of allergy.

*Failure of antihistamines in colds.*—Carefully conducted studies have recently been made which indicate that the antihistamines do not stop the common cold. Paton and his associates (416) reported an interesting study. Ten subjects were given placebo tablets and 12, Neo-Antergan. They were instructed to take the medication in the first 24 hours of a cold and continue for two days. The dosage used was 100 mg. three times daily. The patients' opinions were obtained. Of 10 taking placebos four benefited, while of 12 taking Neo-Antergan four benefited. The average duration of colds in both groups was slightly over six days. The physicians who examined the patients were asked to venture an opinion as to which patient was receiving the drug and which the placebo. Their guesses were correct 50 per cent of the time. Admittedly this was a small series, but these investigators are continuing the study.

A carefully controlled series was observed by Shaw and Wightman (496). In the cold clinic of Cornell University Student Medical Clinic, 443 subjects were observed who had colds of no longer than 48 hours' duration. To one-half of them placebos were administered while to the other half 50 mg. of 2-phenyl-benzyl-amino-methylimidazoline hydrochloride was administered every four hours. The patients were observed daily. Of those receiving the antihistamine 53 per cent thought they were benefited, while of those receiving the placebo 50 per cent regarded themselves improved.

From a well conducted study on a group of 190 subjects in the Army, Hoagland and his co-workers (271) concluded that the antihistamines (Pyribenzamine and Tagathen) showed no greater effect on the subsidence of a cold than did placebos. Of those receiving inert materials 27 per cent reported cure within 24 hours. Pyribenzamine spray was likewise ineffective. The report of Diehl, Baker and Cowan (130) is recalled. These workers found that in a group of patients receiving an inert material for the prevention of colds the average number of colds reported by the subjects was 2.1 and 1.7 during two years, while in the previous two years the same subjects reported an average of 5.6 and 5.4 colds, respectively.

The most recent report of Cowan and Diehl (103a) is of special interest. During the winter of 1948-49 a study was made on a group of cold-susceptible students at the University of Minnesota. The recording, follow-up and evaluation were carefully planned and executed. The study comprised 367 subjects who had a total of 980 colds. At the beginning of the study each student was given a box of 10 pills and instructed to take one every four hours until the cold was cured or until the total number was consumed. The pills were similar in appearance and taste, but were of five different kinds: Pyribenzamine, Thephorin, ascorbic acid, Thephorin with ascorbic acid, and placebo. Each student received one variety of pill in strict order of rotation. The reports by the students indicated that all medication, including the placebos, reduced the average duration of their colds by about 60 per cent.



Fabricant (164), from a recent study of a group of medical and other professional students, has concluded that placebo medication gives as high a percentage of results as do the antihistamines.

In a report of the Council on Pharmacy and Chemistry of the American Medical Association (102) on this subject, suggestions were made for criteria for controlled studies on colds. Among the suggestions was the recommendation that direct virus inoculations be done. Feller and his associates (192) have approached the problem from this viewpoint. In one series of 49 volunteers, direct transmission of cold virus from the secretions of a patient with a cold resulted in about 60 per cent "takes" in each of three groups. The three groups comprised the following: those receiving Pyrrolazote, 50 mg. four times daily beginning just before inoculation; those receiving Neohetramine under similar conditions, and those receiving placebo tablets. Not only was the percentage of colds about the same, but the duration and severity of the symptoms were equal.

In another experiment these authors reported results obtained in 55 families who were under controlled observation and study. In 66 colds which were treated with antihistamines and in 218 which were not treated the duration and severity of the colds were about the same.

While our own observations are necessarily limited, they represent the experience of other allergists with whom we have discussed this subject. We believe they are of some significance. Almost since they were first available we have learned to use the antihistamines as a diagnostic agent to differentiate allergy from infection.

In patients with known allergy and suspected intercurrent colds and in new patients, when the question of differential diagnosis was involved this therapeutic test has been found valuable. Patients responding to the antihistamines have been found by subsequent course and observation to be suffering from allergy. Those who have not responded may of course have an allergy which fails to respond or have a truly infectious condition.

Another experience of significance is the behavior of patients who take antihistamines in full doses several times daily for persistent allergic symptoms. We have had such a series every season for the past few years and are impressed by the fact that these patients develop colds just as often and lasting just as long as they would without the antihistamines.

We believe that the only action of the antihistamines in the common cold is to reduce some of the secretions and perhaps the sneezing. For such effects full doses are required, and even then this action is only obtainable in a minority of patients. Furthermore, these effects are often objectionable and are usually associated with other toxic actions such as pronounced sedation and dizziness.

### GASTROINTESTINAL DISEASE

Since these drugs compete with histamine, it was expected that they would diminish gastric acidity caused by histamine. However, this has generally not been the result. Experimentally (21, 105, 211, 250, 397, 477), these drugs have no effect on the diminution of gastric secretion in animals or man, with certain possible exceptions (553), and in some cases have possibly caused in-



creased acid production (128). Experiments in man have been performed on normal controls who were given histamine and on patients with peptic ulcer. In a small group of hospital patients with peptic ulcer and acute gastritis, contrary to most published reports, we have obtained some benefit from the use of large doses (50 mg.) of Decapryn. We believe the results are due not to decreased acid secretion but more likely to the sedation, atropine-like action and local anesthetic action of this drug.

In gastrointestinal allergy the results have been variable; most reports have dealt with only a small number of cases (98), so that definite conclusions could not be reached. It is known that some patients are able to tolerate an allergenic food if they first take an antihistamine. We might conclude that trial is worth while, although elimination of a known offender, when feasible, is a better rationale.

#### MOTION SICKNESS, NAUSEA AND VOMITING

Although some of the commoner side effects of the antihistamines are nausea and gastric discomfort, it was noted by Gay and Carliner (217, 218) that, in patients susceptible to motion sickness, nausea and vomiting were often prevented by using Dramamine, the 8-chlorotheophylline salt of diphenhydramine. They reported that Dramamine prevented symptoms of seasickness in 132 of 134 men and completely relieved 187 of 195 men who were seasick. These results have been criticized by Tyler (543) who believed that control conditions were not adequate and that comparison with known

remedies such as hyoscine should have been made. Strickland and Hahn (526) found Dramamine effective in preventing airsickness in 71.3 per cent of 108 patients when 100 mg. of the drug was given preflight, whereas a placebo helped only 44.4 per cent of 108 patients. Simon and Seyler (505) believed that Dramamine causes too much drowsiness to be used safely by pilots. Such a side action would be a contraindication to the indiscriminate use of this drug by a person driving any vehicle. Chinn and Oberst (84) found Benadryl as effective as Dramamine in prevention of airsickness, while 8-chlorotheophylline alone gave only slight protection. Hyoscine plus Benadryl was more effective than any of the drugs alone. McEvedy (363) reported that pyranisamine maleate (Anthisan, Neo-Antergan) prevents seasickness as well as hyoscine does.

Carliner, Radman and Gay (76) used Dramamine to treat nausea and vomiting of pregnancy. Thirty-one of 43 patients were completely relieved in three hours with 100 mg. Dougray (132) used 100 mg. of pyranisamine maleate twice a day or 25 mg. of Phenergan three times a day in 94 cases of nausea and vomiting. Eighty-three per cent of patients obtained complete relief, 4 per cent improved and 13 per cent were considered treatment failures. Finch (193) treated 29 patients with nausea and vomiting of pregnancy and 21 who had similar effects from synthetic estrogens with Benadryl and Histadyl with good results. One drug was as effective as the other. The use of antihistaminic drugs to treat the nausea and vomiting due to streptomycin therapy was reported by Bignall and Crofton (38) in four



cases. The nausea and vomiting were relieved, but the associated giddiness was not affected. Stocker (522) found Dramamine effective in preventing postoperative nausea and vomiting following cataract extraction. Chen and Ensor (82), studying apomorphine-induced emesis in dogs, showed that Benadryl is an effective antiemetic and that Dramamine in doses representing equivalent amounts of diphenhydramine is equally effective, whereas 8-chlorotheophylline is ineffective. Phenobarbital and atropine were effective only in hypnotic doses. These authors believed that the probable site of action is the vomiting center or associated pathways.

Results in the use of the antihistamines to treat morphine-withdrawal symptoms (305) might be explained on their central action on the vomiting center.

### RADIATION SICKNESS

Believing that the symptoms of radiation sickness are caused by an increase in histamine release, Lofstrom and Nurnberger (354) treated 18 cases using oral and intravenous doses of Benadryl. Improvement was noted in all cases, and the mental condition of the patients also showed decided improvement. Court Brown and Hunter (103) did not obtain such results using large doses of Neo-Antergan. In fact, symptoms occurred with greater frequency in the treated group than in controls. Five of 17 patients receiving Neo-Antergan developed a rash between the shoulder blades which persisted as long as the drug was given. This type of reaction has not been reported unrelated to irradiation. Mains (375) reduced the incidence of skin reactions of radiation sickness, such

as desquamation and erythema, by giving Benadryl and Pyribenzamine orally and using them topically on irradiated areas. It was possible to use higher doses of x-ray with less reaction by this method. Beeler, Tillisch and Popp (29) used Dramamine in 82 cases and obtained excellent or good results in 79.3 per cent. Of 23 controls, 13 per cent had similar relief from nausea and vomiting. The actual status of these drugs in radiation sickness seems in doubt. One might expect, though, that the symptoms of nausea and vomiting would be relieved as they often are in motion sickness.

#### DISEASES OF THE NERVOUS SYSTEM

In 1948 Budnitz (67) reported on the use of Benadryl in Parkinson's disease. Ten patients had been treated for three to 14 months with doses of 50 mg. given four times daily. All noted considerable improvement. A synergistic action between Benadryl and other drugs, such as atropine, used in the therapy of this disease was noted. Pyribenzamine was found to be ineffective. Ryan and Wood (474) noted similar results with Benadryl in 40 cases. They found that although the rigidity improved and muscular cramps were abolished, the tremor responded poorly, akinesia unaccompanied by rigidity was aggravated and oculogyric crises did not respond. It was noted that the effects were only palliative and a therapeutic maximum was reached at about 10 days. Gates (216) found similar results in one case. Gair and Ducey (213) studied various antihistaminic compounds in 63 patients with parkinsonism. Trimeton, Decapryn and Benadryl were found to be effective in 51—



64 per cent, while Thephorin was effective in 28 per cent. Pyribenzamine, Histadyl, Antistine and several unmarketed compounds gave poor results. Berger (31) found Thephorin of value in 13 of 24 patients.

The mechanism of action of these agents in parkinsonism is unknown, although the effect probably can be explained by the sedative, atropine-like antispasmodic action to be found in drugs such as Benadryl. In the report of Naide (404) on the use of Benadryl in the treatment of nocturnal leg cramps, the good results in all 17 cases treated can probably be similarly explained.

A patient with myotonia atrophica treated by Bussell (70) with Benadryl and later with Neo-Antergan obtained striking improvement. A patient with trigeminal neuralgia, whose attacks could be provoked by the injection of histamine, was relieved by Pyribenzamine and Benadryl. Horton and Brennan (276) believed that this case possibly had an allergic basis. Multiple sclerosis was not helped by these drugs in one series (198).

The results of the use of antihistaminic agents in the treatment of migraine have been equivocal. Most reports deal with only a few cases. Six of 20 patients with migraine treated with Phenergan by Halpern and Hamburger (254) were improved. Eight of 12 patients treated with Thephorin by Cohen *et al.* (95) had 50 per cent or more relief. The report of the Committee on Therapy of the American Academy of Allergy (98) on Trimeton dealt with 44 cases; in 20, good or excellent results were obtained. Four patients with migraine treated with Thephorin by Reynolds and Horton (442) had no relief, and of nine with histamine cephalgia only

two had excellent results. Hunter and Dunlop (281) reported a number of patients with migraine who were not improved by antihistamines.

It has been noted previously that large doses of these agents in man or laboratory animals often cause convulsions. Many of the accidental overdoses reported, especially in children, have caused convulsions, irritability and other evidences of central nervous system stimulation. In their report on Benadryl, McGavack *et al.* (366) noted that three patients with idiopathic epilepsy were made worse by the drug. Churchill and Gammon (85) studied the effect of Benadryl and Pyribenzamine in epileptic persons and found that both drugs can induce seizures in patients with focal lesions of the cerebral cortex. Pyribenzamine also increases petit mal seizures, but Benadryl has an opposite effect and decreases frequency of attacks. These authors did not wish to make claim for the use of Benadryl in the treatment of petit mal. They did suggest that these agents must be used with care in the treatment of patients who have convulsive disorders. They also suggested that this effect might find use in activating or evoking the abnormality in electroencephalographic tests. Although Benadryl and Pyribenzamine are the only drugs reported to have an effect on epilepsy, there is no reason to believe that the other antihistaminic drugs would show any different effect.

Nine patients with functional dysmenorrhea were treated with 200 mg. of Benadryl daily three or four days before menses. Improvement was noted by McGavack *et al.* (366). Ameline (10) used Antergan and



Neo-Antergan with similar results. However, as in other conditions, not all patients were relieved.

### OTHER CONDITIONS

We, as well as others, observed that Pyribenzamine ointment would prevent the erythema of sunburn. At first it was thought that the effect was related to histamine release; however, it was observed by Kline and Baer (310) that this erythema could also be prevented by placing the Pyribenzamine in quartz cups between the skin and the light source. In other words, Pyribenzamine acts as a filter to the erythema-producing ultraviolet rays of sunlight. Benadryl did not give as good results. Friedlaender, Friedlaender and Vandenbelt (203) also observed this effect. Pyribenzamine, Thenylene, Neo-Antergan, Pyrrolazote, Tagathen, Neohetramine and Antistine had an absorbing effect, while Benadryl, Decapryn, Trimeton and Thephorin did not. Others (472) have found that para-aminobenzoic acid is highly effective, and we have observed that it is better than Pyribenzamine.

The symptoms of experimentally induced frostbite were alleviated by pretreatment with Benadryl and Pyribenzamine applied by iontophoresis. Macht *et al.* (369) believed that histamine or a histamine-like substance is liberated in the human skin in the early stages of frostbite.

Alteration in the course of infectious processes has not been demonstrated in man, but Halpern (251) noted that animals injected with large amounts of antihistamines had septic infections from localized lesions

under conditions in which the infections in control animals remained localized. If Halpern's findings could be substantiated in man, they could be interpreted to indicate the inadvisability of using these drugs in infectious diseases, including the common cold. However, Weeks and Gunnar (560) noted no alteration of the microscopic picture of acute inflammation after giving Pyribenzamine to rabbits. Vallery-Radot, Hamburger and Halpern (549) obtained no beneficial results in the treatment of acute infectious nephritis with Phenergan and stated that this type of treatment was not without danger. Craig, Clark and Chalmers (104) used Neo-Antergan in eight cases of acute nephritis and compared results in these patients with those in nine other cases of acute nephritis. Although in the treated group there was a shorter duration of activity, the authors did not make final conclusions.

One case of thrombophlebitis migrans was treated with Histadyl, with improvement in 24 hours (489). The failure of Pyribenzamine and Trimeton to prevent Diodrast reactions when given before injection is reported by Crepea, Allanson and DeLambre (107). Strauss (525) used Thephorin ointment to treat the local symptoms of bee stings and other insect bites. It must be emphasized that this is not the proper therapy for constitutional reactions to bee stings.

Poulsen (429) found the antihistamines effective in 155 of 330 patients suffering from the histamine-like effect of curare preparations. Hoffman (272) claimed that Pyribenzamine used in a small series of pregnant women with hypertension and/or albuminuria amelio-



rated these conditions in most of the cases. To our knowledge this has not been confirmed.

Sensitivity to sunlight (544) and to cold (408, 412) has been treated with these compounds, with variable results. Improvement in capillary resistance following use of the antihistamines has been reported by some investigators (258, 477a), while others have noted no changes in the permeability of the meningeal capillaries (224). Adlersberg (8) suggested use of these drugs in the treatment of gout caused by allergy. He mentioned no cases on which this opinion was based. Moseley (400) and Reynolds, Kahn and Levy (441) have used these agents as topical anesthetics. The latter authors found that 1 per cent solutions of Pyribenzamine, Neo-Antergan and Benadryl produced anesthesia in all but one of 45 patients in 15 minutes, that this effect lasted about one hour and that no toxic effects were found.

Finally, the commonest side effect of these drugs, sedation, can be utilized to advantage. We have administered drugs such as Phenergan, Benadryl and Decapryn on occasion to patients for this sedating action, especially when barbiturates are not tolerated.

## CHAPTER 9

# Administration and Dosage

IN THIS CHAPTER we shall discuss the methods of administration of the antihistamines, the dosage of the various drugs and the conditions influencing dosage, the combination of drugs, the choice of an antihistamine and similar details relating to therapy.

### CONDITIONS DETERMINING SIZE OF DOSE

From the concept of the mechanism of action of the antihistamines it would be expected that in conditions of the same type and severity all persons would respond equally to the same dose of drug. Clinical observation fails to agree with such expected results. Of two persons with vasomotor rhinitis or urticaria of moderate grade, one may require doses of 25 mg. for relief and the other may need 100 mg. or more. In fact, in the one case the drug may work in small doses and in the other it may be ineffective in any amount. The basis for this individual response is not known, although one or two possibilities might be visualized. One might be dealing with individual differences in degradation or enzymatic de-



struction of the antihistamine. Another possibility is that even though allergic symptoms are of equal intensity in both cases, the amount of histamine required to produce them may be much greater in the second case because of a smaller responsiveness of the tissues. In addition to this basic individual difference, there appears to be periodic fluctuation in responsiveness in any one person for which no cause can be assigned. What has been said about therapeutic response also applies to differences in the capacity to tolerate these drugs.

Perhaps the factor which most influences the size of the dose of an antihistamine is the severity of the symptom. A slight urticarial rash may be completely relieved by 25 mg. doses of most of the antihistamines, but relief of severe urticaria and angioneurotic edema may require 150–200 mg. doses of the same drugs. On many occasions we have been called in to see patients who had a severe "serum type" of reaction following penicillin or sulfonamide therapy and who were regarded as having failed to respond to antihistamines. Merely changing the dose from 50 to 100 or 150 mg. was sufficient in most instances to produce a prompt effect. This experience is shared by others. For example, Peterson and Bishop (426), in treating serum sickness in children with Benadryl, found that 50 mg. doses were not always effective whereas 100 mg. doses produced results in all patients.

Gastrointestinal absorption of the drugs may differ not only among individuals but also in the same person on different occasions. An empty stomach will absorb the drug more quickly than a full one, and thus the actual blood titer will be higher. Not infrequently about one-

half the dose, if given before meals, will produce the same effect as a full dose. The drug might be prescribed before or after meals depending on the rapidity and extent of effect desired, but whatever the method, it should be followed consistently in the same patient. It might be added that there is less tendency for gastric irritation to occur when the drug is taken on a full stomach. Gastrointestinal disturbances, such as pylorospasm, nausea, infectious disease and conditions of generalized edema, may also influence absorption and thus modify the effective dose. It is even possible that a large dose of an antihistamine which produces considerable nausea may modify gastric absorption to an extent that the dose is therapeutically less effective than a smaller dose which does not produce this gastric change. This result was supported by our experience (75) in studying the effect of various doses of antihistamine on the degree of inhibition of the histamine flare.

The size and age of the individual have a definite relation to the size of the dose. Large persons usually require larger doses. Older persons require about the same doses as younger persons but usually do not tolerate them as well. Children require smaller doses, although moderate doses are usually tolerated better by them than by adults. Although there are many variations and individualities, we have observed the following general rule for dosage in children. Those over 12 or 14 years of age are given adult doses. Children over 5 and up to 10 or 12 years are given 50 per cent of the adult dose and those from 2 to 5, 33 per cent. In infants 2 years or under doses vary from 5 to 25 per cent of the adult size.



With any particular drug or any individual patient the size of the dose must be considered in terms of the therapeutic/toxicity ratio. A drug which in 25 mg. doses normally causes some sedation or sedates a particular patient cannot usually be used in doses higher than 50 mg. A drug which in usual doses may produce little or no sedation but also little therapeutic effect may still not have an advantage over others, because at effective levels the toxicity may be as great or greater than that of other drugs.

The patient's activities and duties often determine the size of the dose, mainly because of the factor of tolerance. It is usually feasible to give larger doses when the person is at home and even larger doses when he is in bed, because sedation and objections to loss of alertness and diminished power of concentration are less of a consideration. Those who must use maximal powers of mental concentration or must be completely alert, such as students and other professional and business people, must confine themselves to smaller doses of antihistamines. Even those who do physical work may have to have the dose of drug reduced if it causes lassitude or muscular weakness. For aviation pilots, trainmen and those in other critical occupations, the use of any amount of the antihistamines while on duty is questionable.

### DOSAGE OF INDIVIDUAL DRUGS

The doses of the antihistamines not only vary with the factors just discussed and with the physician's custom, but may vary strikingly depending on the individual drug. The differences in individual compounds are

predicated both on the degree of effectiveness and limitations due to toxicity. Despite the claim of many manufacturers that their compound is the most potent or the least toxic, generally speaking, these two phases neu-

TABLE 2.—DOSES OF ANTIHISTAMINES  
(IN MILLIGRAMS) FOR ADULTS

	AVERAGE DOSE	MINIMUM EFFECTIVE DOSE	MAXIMUM DOSES IN SEVERE MANI- FESTATIONS
Antistine	100–200	50	200
Benadryl	50	25	200
Chlorcyclizine (Pera- zil, Di-Paralene)	50–100	25	200
Chlorothen (Tagathen)	50	25	100
Chlor-Trimeton	4	2	12
Decapryn	25	12.5	75
Diatrin	25–50	—	—
Histadyl (Thenylene)	50–100	25	200
Hydryllin	2 tablets	1 tablet	4 tablets
Neo-Antergan	50–100	25	200
Neohetramine	100–200	50	200
Phenergan	25	10	60
Pyribenzamine	50	25	200
Pyrrolazote	50	25	100
Thephorin	25–50	25	100
Trimeton	25	12.5	100
p-Fluorobenzyl-DPE (Lederle)	30	15	50–75
194B (White)	50	25	200

tralize each other. Usually the most potent drugs are also more toxic; thus, although milligram potency may be greater, the higher toxicity will as a rule prevent the use of a dose as large as that of a less toxic drug. An extremely potent antihistamine with a very low toxicity, resulting in a very high potency/toxicity index, has not yet been presented and perhaps never will be.

The following brief discussion of doses of the various



antihistamines is based in large part on our experience and also on the experience of others.

*Antistine.*—The average doses are 100–200 mg. Even in these doses this drug is not highly effective. Most clinical investigators have employed 100 mg. doses. We feel that for results comparable to those obtained with potent drugs much larger doses would have to be given, but we are not sure whether this could be done safely. In moderate doses the drug is only mildly sedative.

*Benadryl.*—A dose of 50 mg. is average, and the usual range is 25–100 mg. Under special conditions much larger doses have been given. This antihistamine is effective in the majority of cases in which antihistamines work. Its chief disadvantage is the tendency to cause sedation; at times, however, this effect is advantageous.

*Chlorcyclizine.*—Our average doses have been 50 and 100 mg. We have also used 200 mg. on occasion. Good results from 25 mg. doses have been claimed, but the Committee on Therapy of the American Academy of Allergy (99) found that a dose of 50 mg. two or three times daily is required for effective results. The sedative action is mild.

*Chlorothen.*—The average dose of this drug is 50 mg. The usual range is 25–100 mg. We have rarely used larger doses. Sedation is moderate.

*Chlor-Trimeton.*—The average dose in our experience is 4 mg. Doses of 8–12 mg. are not well tolerated. Eisenstadt (149) used doses of 2–4 mg., and the Committee on Therapy of the American Academy of Allergy (99) also obtained good results with 2–4 mg.

*Decapryn.*—In our experience (183) a dose of 25 mg. has been the most useful with respect to the potency/toxicity ratio. Others have recommended doses as low as 6 or 12.5 mg. The large dose we have used most frequently is 50 mg., and at times we have used 75 mg. This drug is the most sedative of the present drugs marketed in this country.

*Diatrin.*—The doses used have been chiefly 25 and 50 mg., but the literature on therapy with this drug is meager.

*Di-Paralene.*—See chlorcyclizine.

*Histadyl.*—The average effective dose of this drug is 50–100 mg. The minimum effective dose is 25 mg., and occasionally we have used 200 mg. doses. Sedative action is moderate.

*Hydryllin.*—This is not an individual antihistamine but a combination of diphenhydramine (Benadryl), 25 mg., and aminophylline, 100 mg. Because of its popular use this combination is included here. Our experience indicates that to relieve the manifestations responding to antihistamines 2 tablets are required. When aminophylline effect is desired, as in asthma, at least 2 tablets are necessary.

*Neo-Antergan.*—The average dose is 50–100 mg., and many patients respond to the lesser amount. We have given doses as high as 200 mg., and others, particularly the French, have given even larger amounts. Moderate sedation is obtained from this drug.

*Neohetramine.*—The most common dose is 100 mg., although 50 mg. may produce a slight effect. For effects comparable to those obtained with 50 mg. of potent



antihistamine, 200 mg. of Neohetramine would probably be required. Sedation from moderate dosage is slight.

*Perazil*.—See chlorcyclizine.

*Phenergan*.—This drug is marketed in Europe. It has also been used in our laboratory and in clinical trial by us and others in this country. The average dose we have used is 25 mg. In some cases, particularly when the drug was administered in the evening, 50–60 mg. was given. Doses of 10 or 15 mg. can also be effective. This is the most sedative of all the antihistamines.

*Pyribenzamine*.—The average dose is 50 mg., and the usual range is 25–100 mg. In severe manifestations we have used doses of 200 mg., but with such amounts the patient must be under close observation. Sedation is moderate.

*Pyrrolazote*.—A 50 mg. dose is average. Much smaller doses are not very effective and much larger doses are not well tolerated. In average dosage this drug is moderately sedative.

*Tagathen*.—See chlorothen.

*Thenylene*.—See Histadyl.

*Thephorin*.—The average dose is 25 mg. Doses of 50 mg. produce a high incidence of gastric upsets and excitatory phenomena. The incidence of sedation is low, but stimulation is common.

*Trimeton*.—A 25 mg. dose is most common. Doses of 50 mg. have been used, but with these and larger doses a high frequency of sedation is encountered. Good results have also been claimed with 12.5 mg. doses (63).

*p-Fluorobenzyl-DPE (Lederle)*.—Since this drug has

been used clinically essentially only by us (178) we must rely solely on our experience. A dose of 30 mg. was effective in most patients and the usual range of dosage was 15–50 mg. Occasionally, in severe manifestations, we have used 100 mg. doses. In usual doses it is moderately sedative.

194B (*White*).—The usual dose is 50–100 mg. Its sedative action is mild.

#### FREQUENCY OF ADMINISTRATION

The frequency of oral administration of antihistamines depends on the size of the dose, the persistency or irregularity and severity of the symptoms and the type of drug. Most antihistamines in moderate doses have approximately a four hour duration of effect. If the manifestations are mild the effect may last six to eight hours, but if severe it may last only two or three hours. An average dose may have a four hour effect, but a dose three times average may still be effective after eight or 10 hours.

If the manifestation requires continued drug effect and if average doses are used, it will be necessary to give the medication at regular intervals, such as after meals and at bedtime or every four hours. However, in most cases of nasal allergy and many other manifestations the symptoms are either periodic or cyclic or they vary in intensity from time to time. It then becomes more practical to prescribe medication to be taken as needed, with instructions not to repeat the dose oftener than every four (or more) hours. In many cases of nasal allergy morning symptoms are the chief complaint, and a pill



or capsule in the morning may be all that is needed. In other patients night symptoms may best be modified by a bedtime dose. In some patients we have found that a bedtime dose, by improving the nasal congestion at night, benefits the morning symptoms.

Whether the dose is taken regularly or is taken in the morning and at bedtime, it is often of advantage to take different types of antihistamines in the daytime and in the evening. The less sedative varieties, such as chlorothen, Pyribenzamine, Thenylene and Thephorin, may be used in the daytime; the more sedative ones, such as Benadryl and Decapryn, may be more desirable at night.

Two drugs in particular are likely to produce an effect longer than average in duration. These are Di-Paralene (Perazil) and Phenergan. The effect may last for a period of eight to 12 hours with moderate doses, perhaps longer with larger doses.

Several objective studies have been made which corroborate the clinical observations of duration of action of the antihistamines. McGavack and associates (364) studied the blood levels of subjects who were given 400 mg. of Benadryl or Pyribenzamine. Peak values were found at 90–120 minutes. Since the dosage was unusually large and severe gastric symptoms were produced, these findings cannot be taken as representative. Perry and Hearin (424) determined the threshold whealing response to histamine by iontophoresis. They found that after 50 mg. of Benadryl or Pyribenzamine or 2 tablets of Hydryllin the maximal inhibition was at two hours and the total duration of measurable effect

was five hours. We (75) also studied the duration of measurable inhibition of histamine flare obtained by scratch test after oral doses of antihistamines which were approximately twice the usual average therapeutic dose. Our findings indicated that in most instances the inhibiting effect on histamine lasted about four hours.

By using large doses of antihistamines during the 24 hours preceding and following each desensitizing injection, Maietta (374) claimed that he was able to administer large doses of the antigen and to produce much better results in a series of 45 hay fever patients.

The objections to unnecessary regular use of antihistamines are several. Side effects are likely to occur. Remote and more serious toxicities are always a possibility. There is also the likelihood of a tolerance for the drug (119a, 397a). Hunter (279) administered large doses of Neo-Antergan for an extended period to several patients with chronic urticaria; he stated that "once the required dosage was established increased tolerance to the drug was not observed in the first three months of treatment." Our own observations (119a) indicate that a tolerance for antihistamines may be a consistent result of continued use of these drugs.

#### SELECTION OF ANTIHISTAMINE

Different persons respond differently to the various antihistamines. As has been pointed out by the Council on Pharmacy and Chemistry of the American Medical Association (101), the availability of too many similarly acting antihistamines presents real difficulties. The average practitioner cannot hope to become thoroughly



acquainted with the characteristics and peculiarities of a score of antihistaminic drugs.

For practical purposes and for most occasions we would advise that the average physician become conversant with one member of each of three groups. The groups may be divided as follows: Group 1 comprises the less sedative and usually less potent drugs and in it may be included Antistine, Neohetramine, Thephorin and chlorcyclizine (Di-Paralene, Perazil). Group 2 contains the potent and moderately sedative varieties and includes chlorothen, Chlor-Trimeton, Diatrin, Histadyl (Thenylene), Neo-Antergan, Pyribenzamine, Pyrrolazote and Trimeton. Group 3 comprises potent, highly sedative drugs and contains Benadryl, Decapryn and Phenergan. If the practitioner will adopt one of each group for his armamentarium, the trio selected should provide an effective range for most needs. For example, he might choose the trio of chlorcyclizine, Pyribenzamine and Decapryn. If the patient becomes sedated from Pyribenzamine, it is obvious that chlorcyclizine rather than Decapryn would be tried next. On the other hand, if a greater sedative action is desired Decapryn would be chosen. The patient's temperament and his past behavior to other antihistamines often give a clue to the variety to try. Another combination, for example, would be Thephorin, Thenylene and Benadryl.

The choice of a particular drug is also influenced by specific needs. For instance, at night and particularly in itching conditions a highly sedative drug may be advantageous. This selection may also apply to a highly nervous person. For night, too, long-lasting effects may be

obtained from drugs such as Di-Paralene or Phenergan.

Perhaps the commonest question about antihistamines we are asked by physicians and students is: "What is the best antihistaminic drug?" To such a question one cannot give a simple reply. We have already indicated which drugs are the more potent and effective, but the factor of individual response is one that cannot be ignored. In a given series of cases a comparison may show that one drug has a higher incidence of potency than another. Yet in a particular person the drug with the lower index may be more effective. The same individuality pertains to side actions. Thus, the response to different drugs of a group of three is not always what might be expected from a knowledge of the general characteristics of the drugs in question.

Furthermore, it may be necessary in certain cases to try out an additional array of drugs before finding a particular one which is effective and agreeable. Indeed, some practitioners believe that this individuality is so striking that not until all drugs have been tried can one say of a particular patient that he fails to respond to antihistamines. Sulzberger (529) displays to his patient a card on which all the antihistaminic tablets and capsules are mounted and requests him to point out all those he has previously tried. The results are a guide in appraisal of the individual's response and in trial of the remaining varieties.

### DRUG COMBINATIONS

Because of the short duration and incompleteness of effect of the antihistamines in some types of allergy and



because of the frequent objections to side actions, many drugs have been used with the antihistamines, either separately or in a combination capsule or tablet. One of the most common objectives in therapy is to neutralize the sedative action of the antihistamines by the use of stimulants. It should be emphasized at the outset that to accomplish this is not as simple as it sounds. It is not easy to judge the amount of stimulant required; if too much is given there is overstimulation, if not enough, sedation is still present. Furthermore, the duration of the effect of each (stimulation and sedation) is not necessarily the same. Here again the relative doses for the individual must be juggled, and it becomes obvious that a predetermined combination in a manufactured tablet is more apt to be unsuitable than suitable for any particular case. The medication must be in a form amenable to change in proportions. The principal drugs which have been used are amphetamine, ephedrine, aminophylline and caffeine. Amphetamine, desoxyephedrine and related drugs are probably the best for this purpose, when no action other than stimulation is desired.

On rare occasions, the addition of a sedative is advantageous when the excitatory action of a particular antihistamine is objectionable.

In some instances benefit may be gained by combining two antihistamines. The purpose may be an attempt to administer a higher total dose by using a stimulating with a sedating antihistamine. For example, one might combine Benadryl with Thephorin. Or, if Pyribenzamine happens to be stimulating in the particular patient, the

combined use of Pyribenzamine and Decapryn may enable him to take not only more Pyribenzamine but a much greater total dose of antihistamine. Another objective might be the combination of a drug having quick action and short duration with one slower in onset but having longer action. One such combination is Thenylene and chlorcyclizine.

Drugs having other antiallergic effects should often be used with the antihistamines. For example, in many cases or stages of nasal allergy ephedrine given orally with an antihistamine will produce results which the latter cannot do alone. This combination is also successful in some cases of urticaria. In asthma the antihistamines are usually of no benefit when used alone, but they are sometimes of additional benefit when added to other antiasthmatic therapy. It cannot be overemphasized that ephedrine, epinephrine, aminophylline, Norisodrine or Isuprel, Orthoxine and iodides are much more important than the antihistamines in asthma.

Much has been said about Hydryllin, which is a combination of 25 mg. of Benadryl and 100 mg. of aminophylline in each tablet. Markow and his associates (380) found this combination effective in 70 per cent of their asthma patients and in 52 per cent of hay fever patients; however, the toxic reactions remained high. Brown and Brown (66) also observed much benefit from this combination. Our experience is that this tablet produces the effect expected from the amount of Benadryl it contains in conditions such as hay fever and urticaria, as well as the effect expected from the amount of aminophylline in asthma. Other combinations are being



offered in tablet form, including Thenylene with ephedrine, Pyribenzamine with ephedrine, etc. (see Appendix).

Analgesics have also been combined with antihistamines, primarily for the treatment of colds. Aspirin, acetophenetidin and caffeine are the most common. Therapy of colds with antihistamines has been discussed in a previous chapter. Attention should be called to the possible hazards of prescribing combinations containing aspirin or other analgesics to which allergic persons are often highly sensitive.

#### METHOD OF ADMINISTRATION

*Oral.*—The most commonly used route of administration of antihistamines is the oral one. In most instances this route of medication is effective and adequate. Disadvantages include the objectionable taste of the drug and the fact that under certain conditions absorption from the gastrointestinal tract is poor or uncertain.

For oral use the drug is usually procurable in capsules or pills which are sugar coated, in plain compressed tablets or in grooved tablets. The form of the unit may appear offhand to be an insignificant factor in therapy, but it is enlightening to see how much more frequently children and even adults will choose a sugar-coated, elegant-looking pill in preference to an equally (or more) effective, soft and bitter-tasting tablet. The number of milligrams contained in each unit dose (capsule or tablet) is of considerable practical importance. For example, if the average effective dose is 50 mg. and the drug comes in 25 mg. tablets, the incidence of effectiveness will not be as high as the drug deserves. It is an

almost universal reaction for the patient to regard two tablets as a double dose. If he takes two he regards himself as heroic, and rarely will he take more. If the 50 mg. is placed in one tablet he still regards it as one dose. We would recommend to the physician that whenever possible he prescribe the intended average dose which comes in one tablet, using a half tablet or a smaller tablet for a smaller dose and two or more regular-sized tablets for a larger dose. We would further recommend to the manufacturers that such an arrangement of units would be to the best advantage for effectiveness of their product.

Enteric coating has been used by several pharmaceutical houses to produce delayed antihistamine effect. The products are primarily for use at night when action is desired several hours later. If symptoms are present at bedtime a plain tablet or capsule should, of course, be taken together with the enteric-coated one. One manufacturer has combined the two features in one tablet, with the immediately dissolved antihistamine on the outside and the enteric-coated dose in the core of the pill. Theoretically, the enteric coating would frequently be considered highly desirable were it not for the fact that the behavior of such coatings is notoriously uncertain.

Elixirs or sirups of most of the antihistamines are obtainable. The amounts vary for different antihistamines, but for most the dose per teaspoonful is from 20 to 40 per cent of the average adult dose. The chief advantages are, of course, that use of this form is practical for children and that the dose can be made more elastic.



*Injection.*—Intramuscular or intravenous administration of antihistamines is useful at times. These methods are certainly not indicated for routine use or in ordinary cases. Now and then there may be reason to suspect that gastrointestinal absorption is poor or unreliable, and injection of the drug may change a poor result into a good one. Injection may also be indicated when rapid effect is desired, as in allergic emergencies such as allergic reactions to injections or edema of the larynx. In such cases, it should be remembered that epinephrine and not an antihistamine is the first drug to be used, to be followed by the antihistamine if desired. We have used intramuscular injections of Benadryl in patients with dermatographism for its quick effect on calming of skin irritability to enable us to proceed with skin testing.

In giving intramuscular or intravenous injections special care is necessary with regard to dosage. Intramuscular or intravenous doses have been 10–50 mg. Intravenous injections must be given slowly and the dose should be well diluted. Larger doses have been used experimentally by others. Mackmull (371) gave intravenous injections to 55 nonallergic subjects, using Benadryl in doses of 50–300 mg. Doses of 100 mg. or more always caused reactions, some of which affected the nervous and cardiovascular systems. McElin and Horton (362) treated allergic patients with Benadryl, giving 20 mg. intramuscularly or 10–100 mg. intravenously by continuous drip method within a 10 minute period. Side effects are expected with intravenous medication. Rosenberg and Blumenthal (463) reported their results with intravenous use of Benadryl, the average dose being 30

mg. Although the patients were improved, there was no indication that the effect was any better than that with oral therapy. The Friedlaenders (208) believed that Benadryl given intravenously may be a helpful adjunct in treatment of status asthmaticus. While we have also had a similar impression at times, we are not sure that the salutary effect may not be due to sedation. McGavack and his associates (366) noted unpleasant symptoms from the injection of Benadryl. Miller (395) reported good results from intravenous or intramuscular injection of 2–15 mg. of Neo-Antergan, but noted no obvious advantage of the method.

Some of the antihistamines are extremely irritating, and severe local inflammations are possible from intramuscular or other injections.

*Suppositories.*—Rectal administration may be desirable to obtain a local effect in conditions such as pruritus ani or to take the place of oral administration when it is difficult or absorption is disturbed. Since many of the antihistamines are irritating the local tolerance data (presented elsewhere in this manual) should be studied before a drug is used for this purpose.

*Eye drops.*—Solutions of antihistamines have been used in treatment of eye inflammations, particularly in conjunctivitis. Antistine in 0.5 per cent concentration is useful in some cases of hay fever and other simple conjunctivitis and occasionally in vernal catarrh. It should be mentioned that Antistine and other antihistaminic eye drops show some tendency toward irritation of the conjunctiva and skin; contact sensitizations have also been observed.



The Friedlaenders (201) found Antistine drops effective in allergic conjunctivitis. Stocker (522) used Antistine, 0.25–0.50 per cent, or Histadyl, 0.5 per cent, in drops or ointment and found them helpful in blepharitis, marginal keratitis, conjunctivitis, vernal catarrh, episcleritis, iritis, herpes of the cornea, phlyctenular conjunctivitis and allergic dermatitis. Hurwitz (282) also found Antistine eye drops beneficial in superficial eye conditions.

Eye drops combining 0.5 per cent Antistine with 0.025 per cent Privine were used by Daily and Daily (116), with benefit in some types of conjunctivitis. To study the tolerance of the eye for various antihistamines Grant and Loeb (235) noted the effect of local application on the rabbit's cornea. The maximal concentrations tolerated varied with each drug. On the basis of the experimental work, the authors suggest the following concentrations suitable for clinical use: Decapryn 1 per cent, Antistine 0.75 per cent, Benadryl, Neo-Antergan, Pyribenzamine and Thephorin 0.5 per cent, and Thenylene 0.4 per cent.

*Nasal application.*—The instillation of solutions of antihistamines into the nose may produce temporary relief in nasal allergy. This method is particularly useful in stubborn cases of turbinate intumescence which do not respond to oral use of antihistamines. Nose drops of 0.5 per cent Pyribenzamine may be effective; however, Pyribenzamine is frequently not well tolerated in this form. We (184) have secured best results by using a fine spray, best obtained with a nebulizer having a nasal attachment (such as the DeVilbiss No. 40). The results

are usually not immediate, but are most evident after several and frequent sprayings.

Schwartz and Leibowitz (482) used 0.5 per cent Pyribenzamine in drops or spray for routine hay fever and perennial rhinitis cases and obtained good results. However, they did not utilize an aerosol type of spray, and 38 per cent of the patients complained of a burning sensation of the nose and throat. Brem and Zonis (55) also used 0.5 per cent Pyribenzamine nose drops; good results were obtained, but irritative effects were also noted by them. Zeller (586) employed nose drops of 1 per cent Pyribenzamine with good results.

*Aerosols for asthma.*—In guinea pigs we (189) have shown that aerosols of antihistamines were effective in preventing histamine asthma and that a smaller amount was required for this method than for intraperitoneal injection. Since oral administration of antihistamines has little effect in asthma, we thought that topical application by aerosol might be advantageous. We experimented with various concentrations and methods and found that a 2 per cent solution of Pyribenzamine was the most desirable strength (184). This solution is administered by a hand-operated nebulizer or aerosolized under pressure. In some instances only a few whiffs are sufficient, in others 0.25 or 0.5 cc. may be required. The allergic cough and mild wheezing are most responsive, while acute asthma is less likely to respond. The treatment may be given frequently with safety, since only a very small amount of the drug is inhaled.

Friedman (210) reported good results in 12 asthmatic patients given aerosol of 1 per cent Benadryl. The



acute attacks were relieved in eight to 10 minutes. Rubitsky *et al.* (473) also described relief obtained with aerosols of Benadryl.

*Iontophoresis.*—Aaron (1) introduced Pyribenzamine by iontophoresis nasally in five patients with seasonal hay fever, with relief lasting one to four days. Cortés and Rodriguez Herrera (100), however, obtained only brief improvement by nasal iontophoresis of Benadryl. In pruriginous dermatitis their results with this method were similar. Aaron and co-workers (3) obtained good results in dermatitis associated with pruritus by iontophoresis of 5–10 per cent Pyribenzamine.

*Topical applications to skin.*—Following extensive experimentation with topical applications of antihistamines to the skin, we (181) reported in 1947 that an ointment of 2 per cent Pyribenzamine was effective in a number of pruritic conditions, including atopic dermatitis and pruritus ani. Since then a number of pharmaceutical houses have put out antihistamine ointments and creams, using various bases. Topical applications are helpful, particularly if the lesions are not too widespread. They should not be used on acutely inflamed skin. Some skins are irritated by the ointments, while others develop a contact dermatitis. The preparations we have used most frequently are Pyribenzamine cream and Thephorin ointment. When a more greasy protective covering is desired Pyribenzamine ointment should be used. On a few occasions we have found a solution preferable to an ointment.

Pyribenzamine cream was found effective in lichen simplex chronicus by Sulzberger *et al.* (530). In atopic

dermatitis they found it ineffective. Laymon and Schmid (324), D'Avanzo (121) and Woolridge and Joseph (582) reported on the use of Thephorin ointment in various dermatoses. Strauss (525) used it in bee stings. On the other hand, Perry (422), using Benadryl ointment, and Peck and associates (417), using Pyribenzamine ointment, found little effect on the histamine wheal and flare.



## CHAPTER 10

# Toxic Effects

IN THIS CHAPTER we shall discuss primarily the undesirable actions of the antihistamines. However, it may be fitting at this point to reiterate briefly the limitations of the therapeutic actions of these drugs, which constitute undesirable features in themselves.

The antihistamines do not influence all histamine effects. For example, the histamine stimulation of gastric secretion is not affected by these drugs. There is evidence that in addition to histamine release there are other mechanisms in anaphylaxis and allergy, and these are not modified by the antihistaminic compounds. Even though a type of allergic manifestation may owe its major symptoms to histamine, in some particular individuals, for reasons unknown at present, the antihistamines may be ineffective. There are also degrees and stages of any allergic syndrome which may fail to respond to these drugs. The net result is that the action of these compounds is at best virtually never complete. There is also the obvious limitation in usefulness resulting from the palliative nature and the short-lasting action of these

compounds. In addition, there are many types of hypersensitivity phenomena which are apparently not dependent on histamine action and not responsive to the antihistamines. The possibility further exists that long-continued administration of these substances may result in the development of a tolerance for them and a lessening in effectiveness (119a, 397a).

Lack of sufficient appreciation of the limitations of these drugs has resulted in neglect of therapy which would have a chance to be more effective. An example is the much greater usefulness of epinephrine, ephedrine, iodides and aminophylline in asthma. Elimination or avoidance of the allergens may not only produce more complete relief, but in the case of food allergy may also result in the acquisition of tolerance. Dependence on the antihistamines has been disastrous to a large percentage of hay fever sufferers. Since about one third of them have an associated asthma and since the antihistaminic drugs are of little help in asthma, many persons have been chagrined to find themselves experiencing asthma which they did not expect. Desensitization treatment, which is usually effective in the prevention of such asthmas, should be the treatment of choice in these cases.

### COMMON AND MINOR SIDE ACTIONS

By "side action" is meant that activity of the drug which is other than that for which it is customarily employed therapeutically. At times such side action, for example, the sedative action in a severe case of itching, may become an advantageous feature of therapy. In most instances, however, side actions are synonymous



with undesirable or toxic effects. Since the entire series of antihistamines have much in common in this phase of their activity, we shall discuss the various untoward reactions as a group and later make a few remarks about each drug.

*Sedation.*—The sedative effect of the antihistamines is their most characteristic side action. Depending on the individual susceptibilities of the person, the nature of the specific drug and the dose, this sedative action may assume varying degrees of severity. The mildest effect is one of calming the patient, making him less taut or nervous than he is normally. If this influence does not progress to a more intense action, the result may be desirable. The next stage is one of diminishing alertness or slight difficulty in mental concentration. The patient may feel somewhat detached from his environment and is less responsive to outside stimuli. He may feel as if he is "walking on air." There may be a feeling of numbness. This stage may proceed to a stage of confusion and even to disorientation.

In more severe effects the patient becomes groggy and, if still more severe, very sleepy. The sedative effect often reaches a stage comparable to that obtained from a soporific dose of a barbiturate and not infrequently the effect is even more pronounced. The hypnotic effect is useful at times, if the patient takes the drug at night or if he is confined to his home in the daytime. For the most part, however, this sedative action, except in its mildest form, is objectionable and endangers the patient as well as those who are dependent for their safety on his alertness. Sedation of one degree or another is a common ef-

fect of the antihistamines, the incidence varying from about 20 to 60 per cent with average therapeutic doses. There is a tendency to develop tolerance for the sedative action, sometimes after the first few doses of the drug.

*Excitation.*—In very large doses excitation will occur with all antihistamines, the ultimate effect being exhibited in the form of convulsions. With average clinical doses of most antihistamines, excitatory phenomena occur in a minority of patients. Certain individuals are more apt to respond by stimulation than by sedation. This is particularly true of highly nervous persons and of young children. Excitatory phenomena are more common in children than in adults. In this respect children approach more closely the toxicity pattern observed in experimental laboratory animals in which excitatory phenomena from these drugs are the rule.

In its mildest form, stimulation may be confined to a feeling of increased energy and well being and greater talkativeness. The effect is seldom confined to this stage, however, but proceeds usually to more objectionable features. A feeling of nervousness or jitteriness is most common. Dizziness and unsteadiness of gait may occur, although these effects are probably more often produced by sedation. Shaking and muscular tremors may constitute a severer form of excitation. Muscle twitching and delirium are signs of more advanced stages of cerebral stimulation and should be regarded as a danger signal. Convulsions will, of course, take place in the severest forms of excitation. It is noteworthy that when fatal poisoning from antihistamines has occurred convulsions have appeared to be a characteristic manifestation.



Other neuromuscular effects noted and not always classifiable are headaches, blurring of vision and other visual disturbances, faintness and muscular weakness.

*Digestive tract.*—Symptoms referable to the digestive tract are not uncommon. Although some of the antihistamines are more likely to produce gastrointestinal irritation than others, all are capable of doing so. The source of such upsets is of two types: systemic or toxic and chemical, by direct irritation of the mucosa. Perhaps the commonest symptom produced is epigastric distress, often associated with pyrosis. Nausea not infrequently occurs and, in severe cases, vomiting may follow. Intestinal symptoms, such as colicky pain, distention and diarrhea or constipation, may also be part of the digestive tract disturbance. The antihistamines tend to produce gastrointestinal symptoms in persons who have other gastrointestinal abnormalities, such as peptic ulcer or irritable colon.

*Dryness.*—An atropine-like action on the salivary and nasal secretions is not rare. In mild forms it is usually not noticeable, particularly when diminution of excessive secretions, as in vasomotor rhinitis, is beneficial. However, it often happens that the drying effect is excessive and objectionable. The extreme dryness of the nose and throat may be worse than the rhinorrhea of the disease. Dryness of the mouth, due primarily to an effect on the salivary glands, may be a valid reason for discontinuing use of the drug. The gland-inhibiting action may extend to the mucous glands of the bronchi and produce a diminution in expectoration which sometimes results in aggravation of the asthma.

*Cardiovascular system.*—The effects on the cardiovascular system are chiefly those of excitation. Palpitation and tachycardia are perhaps the commonest complaints in this group. Frequently these symptoms are accompanied by a fall in blood pressure, although hypertension from antihistamines is observed at times. Precordial discomfort and arrhythmia have also been noted.

*Other side actions.*—Difficulty in urination, particularly in men with enlarged prostates, occurs at times. Occasionally this may result in complete urinary obstruction (581). Sometimes urinary frequency is a symptom. Diminution in libido has been noted, an effect which is probably secondary to a sedative action. Various types of skin lesions have been described.

#### TOXICITY FEATURES OF INDIVIDUAL DRUGS

In discussing the variations in kind and degree of side actions of the different drugs we are moved to point out again that such data and opinions are beset with many pitfalls. Even though we have had opportunity to compare almost all the antihistamines under reasonably similar conditions and frequently in the same patients, we feel unable to give conclusive opinions concerning moderate differences between various antihistamines. In most instances we can only point out impressions, although we have available figures for toxicity observations for most of these drugs.

*Antistine.*—Arbesman (15) made a comparative study of the clinical toxicity of five antihistamines. In some of the patients all the drugs were compared. Antistine caused side effects in 14 per cent of patients,



whereas Neohetramine showed a 16 per cent incidence, Pyribenzamine 26 per cent, Neo-Antergan 33 per cent and Hydryllin 35 per cent. Schwartz (481) in a similar study found the incidence to be 23 per cent for Antistine, 7 per cent for Neohetramine, 20 per cent for Histadyl (Thenylene), 25 per cent for Neo-Antergan, 35 per cent for Pyribenzamine and 61 per cent for Benadryl. Overton (414) found side actions with Antistine in 16 per cent of patients and reported that one child had convulsions from a 100 mg. tablet. Our experience and that of the vast majority of other workers indicate that in moderate doses Antistine is one of the least toxic of the antihistamines. It bears repetition that, in the doses discussed, this drug is also one of the least effective, and it is probable that with doses large enough to approximate therapeutic effects of more potent drugs this compound may have no advantage on a toxicity basis. The side actions are the usual ones, described earlier.

*Benadryl*.—This antihistamine belongs to the highly sedative class. We have found an incidence of sedation of about 50 per cent with 50 mg. doses. Excitatory effects are not as common as they are with some of the other drugs, unless very large doses are used, nor are gastric irritations as likely to occur with Benadryl as with some of the other less sedative drugs. Levin (334) reported a 60 per cent incidence of sedation and noted that the development of tolerance to sedation was common. He also reported other side actions, such as weakness, stupor, narcolepsy and confusion. Waldbott (555) claimed that most of his patients taking Benadryl had some degree of dizziness and sleepiness. Two com-

plained of muscular twitching and in three asthma was aggravated. Loveless and Brown (359) noted a 60 per cent incidence of sedation, while Waldriff and co-workers (557) reported this effect in 43 per cent of patients, compared to 25 per cent with Thephorin, 24 per cent with Trimeton, 23 per cent with Histadyl, 22 per cent with chlorothen, 20 per cent with Neo-Antergan and 19 per cent with Pyribenzamine.

*Chlorcyclizine (Di-Paralene, Perazil).*—The toxicity index of this drug is low and its side actions usually mild. With 50–100 mg. doses we (179) found the incidence of side effects to be 18 per cent. Sedation was the commonest effect. Diarrhea, cardiac symptoms, headache and excessive dryness were noted occasionally. Moderate to severe side effects were observed in 12.6 per cent of patients by members of the Committee on Therapy of the American Academy of Allergy (99), whereas Jaros and associates (289) noted a 33 per cent incidence of side effects in 30 subjects who were given doses of 100 mg.

*Chlorothen (Tagathen).*—The toxic effects from this antihistamine are about the same as those of most other drugs of this class. The major effect is sedation, although other effects noted were nausea and indigestion. Occasionally, headache, constipation or an itching rash occurred. In a series of 232 patients we (176) found an incidence of side effects of 30 per cent. In a small series of cases, Taub and his associates (535) noted an incidence of 10 per cent. However, the size of the group is too small to be statistically significant.

*Chlor-Trimeton.*—Moderate to severe side effects were observed in 7.5 per cent of a large group of pa-



tients who received doses of 2–4 mg. (99). The percentage of those having mild toxic reactions was not recorded in this report. Many of our patients have required larger doses (4–12 mg.) to obtain good therapeutic effects, and with these doses the side actions are considerably more frequent and severe.

*Decapryn.*—This drug, in average therapeutic doses, is one of the most sedative. In doses of 12.5 and 25 mg., more often the latter, we (183) found an incidence of side actions of 34 per cent. Most effects were variations of sedation, although headache, epigastric pain and dermatitis were occasionally noted. Although the incidence of side actions with these doses is probably lower than that for Benadryl, larger doses of Decapryn, say 50–75 mg., produce more frequent and more severe reactions than 50–100 mg. doses of Benadryl. Sheldon and co-workers (499) reported drowsiness in 57 per cent of patients. Brown and his associates (65), on the other hand, claimed that side effects were produced in less than 10 per cent of those taking doses of from 12.5 to 50 mg.

*Diatrin.*—In a study of a series of patients with dermatoses, Combes and his co-workers (97) reported a 21 per cent incidence of side effects, most of which were gastrointestinal.

*Dramamine.*—This compound is used especially for motion sickness. As is the case with Benadryl, Simon and Seyler (505) noted considerable drowsiness from Dramamine and warned against its use in pilots.

*Histadyl (Thenylene).*—In average therapeutic doses we (182) have found the drug to be moderately seda-

tive. The incidence of side effects, most of which were forms of sedation, was 25 per cent. Other unpleasant symptoms noted at times were vertigo, dryness of the mouth and throat, excitation, insomnia, headache, nausea and diarrhea. Friedlaender and Friedlaender (202) also observed side effects in 25 per cent of patients, and Schwartz (481) in 20 per cent. Peirce and Mothersill (418) stated that side effects were infrequent.

*Hydryllin*.—This is a combination of diphenhydramine and aminophylline. The side effects in general are of three types. The Benadryl is responsible for the sedation. This side action has not been drastically reduced if a dose of 2 tablets (which equals 50 mg. of Benadryl) is used. A few patients note the excitatory effects of the aminophylline, while others have gastrointestinal irritation, also primarily due to the aminophylline. Arbesman (15) noted a 35 per cent incidence of side effects, Markow and his co-workers (380) a 37 per cent incidence, and Levin and Moss (335) a 25 per cent incidence. Levin and Moss remarked that the 25 per cent figure compares favorably with the frequency of side effects when Benadryl alone is used. However, they used only 1 tablet of Hydryllin, which is equivalent to 25 mg. of Benadryl.

*Neo-Antergan*.—This drug belongs to the group with a moderate incidence and degree of side effects. In 50 mg. doses it is probably less sedative than Pyribenzamine. However, 100 mg. doses are often required for moderately severe allergic conditions. Neo-Antergan has a rather common tendency to produce gastrointestinal symptoms. Arbesman (15) found a 33 per cent in-



cidence of side effects from this drug, and Schwartz (481) noted a 24 per cent incidence.

*Neohetramine*.—This is unquestionably one of the least toxic of the antihistamines when used in doses of 50–100 mg. However, in such doses the efficacy of this drug is poor. Much larger doses have not been consistently employed in therapy, but if such large doses were used, the toxicity would probably be as great as that of the more toxic drugs. The commonest side action is sedation. With doses of 50 mg. we (32) obtained an incidence of side actions of 9 per cent, with 100 mg., 16 per cent. Arbesman (15) noted an incidence of 16 per cent, while Crip and Aaron (108) reported 10 per cent, and the Friedlaenders (207) gave an incidence of 12 per cent for doses of 50–100 mg.

*Pyribenzamine*.—This antihistamine is in the group having moderate side effects. Its major side action is sedation, although in a fair number of persons excitatory phenomena may result. Gastrointestinal symptoms are not rare. Toleration on the whole is about on a par with that of most of the antihistaminic drugs. We (186) found that side effects occurred in 25 per cent of patients, Arbesman (15) noted an incidence of 26 per cent and Schwartz (481), of 35 per cent. Loveless and Brown (359) noted that gastrointestinal symptoms occurred more frequently from Pyribenzamine than from Benadryl.

*Pyrrrolazote*.—This drug belongs to the moderately toxic group when used in 50 mg. doses. In doses of 100 mg. or more the incidence and degree of side effects are high. Sedation is the commonest toxic action, although

gastrointestinal irritation, such as epigastric discomfort and nausea, is often produced. With 50 mg. doses we (180) noted a 26 per cent incidence of side actions.

*Thephorin*.—This drug is characterized by the fact that its most usual untoward effect is stimulation. The principal symptoms are nausea, palpitation and nervousness. More severe excitation may result in vomiting and insomnia. In some persons the side actions may be those due to sedation. The reported incidence of side effects varies with different authors, the following being typical examples: Levin and Moss (336), 20 per cent; Cohen and associates (95), 18 per cent; Gelfand (223), 12 per cent; Crip and Aaron (109), 23 per cent; Moncheck (398), 33 per cent, and Pennypacker and Sharpley (420), 45 per cent. Although most authors agree that excitatory effects, including insomnia and gastrointestinal symptoms, are the commonest, some workers (223, 336) place sedative action as that most characteristic of the drug.

*Trimeton*.—This antihistamine when used in doses of 25–50 mg. is of about the same toxicity as most drugs. Its chief side effect is sedation and the pattern of side actions is not much different from that of such a representative drug as Pyribenzamine. Brown (63) reported a 16 per cent incidence of side effects in his patients, most of whom took 12.5 mg. doses. Waldriff and co-workers (557) in a comparative study obtained a 24 per cent incidence of side actions with Trimeton, compared with 19 per cent with Pyribenzamine and 43 per cent with Benadryl.

194B (*White*).—This drug may be classed among



the least toxic of the antihistamines, comparable to Antistine and Neohetramine, but having the advantage of more decisive therapeutic effectiveness. In a series of 249 patients (33), most of whom received 50 mg. doses though many received 100 mg., the incidence of side actions was 16 per cent. Mild sedation was the commonest effect, though a few patients complained of nervousness, gastrointestinal upsets or dermatitis.

*p*-Fluorobenzyl-DPE (*Lederle*).—With doses of 30–50 mg. (the usual range) the side effects, in incidence and degree, are much like those with average doses of Pyribenzamine. In a fairly large series of patients we (178) observed a 19 per cent incidence of side effects.

#### SEVERE OR UNUSUAL EFFECTS AND SPECIAL STUDIES

In this section we shall discuss reports of some of the severe or unusual reactions to the antihistamines, which are usually caused by large doses or prolonged use. However, because of individual susceptibilities, some of these effects have been observed immediately and after use of moderate doses. Special studies on toxic effects of these drugs will also be considered.

*Nervous system*.—Effects on the nervous system are common with large doses and the few mentioned here represent only a small fraction of the incidence. Disorientation, confusion and delirium are not infrequent toxic results. Borman (45) reported that a nun took 2,000 mg. of Benadryl in 48 hours, with resultant disorientation, confusion and lethargy and with complete recovery 48 hours after discontinuing the drug. The

author commented that the regular doses of the drug may have affected her judgment, permitting her to take excessive doses. Weil (561) recorded a severe effect in a 3½ year old boy who was given 100 mg. of Benadryl. The reaction consisted of excitement, hilarity, muscular twitchings, and involuntary movements of the extremities, followed by urinary incontinence and inability to recognize his parents. The child dove from the bed to the floor, landing on his head, and laughed as he was picked up. It is interesting to note that subsequent doses of 50 mg. had no ill effects. Sachs (475) reported the occurrence of hallucinations from a moderate dose of Benadryl. Lott and co-workers (357) noted acute delirium and hallucinations in a young woman 48 hours after Pyribenzamine therapy with moderate doses was begun. A case of hysteria in a young woman was observed after moderate doses of Benadryl (519).

A severe reaction from Benadryl was described by Geiger and his associates (221). A woman, aged 26, was taking 50 mg. of the drug three times daily. After 48 hours she complained of palpitation, dimmed vision, malaise, heartburn and nausea, and shortly after became unconscious, cold and pulseless. Sometime later, after recovery, a similar effect was reproduced. Schwartzberg and Wilkerson (485) reported a case in which a woman, 38, took moderate doses of Benadryl for several weeks and then showed symptoms of neuritis, loss of alertness and inability to work. Complete abolition of these symptoms did not occur until two months after discontinuance of the drug. Slater and Francis (506) described the case of a young man who was so drowsy



after a dose of 50 mg. of Benadryl that he wrecked an electric platform cargo truck which he was operating.

Churchill and Gammon (85) studied the influence of Pyribenzamine and Benadryl in epileptics and concluded that both drugs are capable of inducing seizures in persons with focal lesions. Although Pyribenzamine increased the petit mal attacks, Benadryl decreased their frequency. The authors concluded that the antihistamines must be used with care in patients with convulsive disorders.

After moderate doses of Benadryl, acute labyrinthitis occurred in a young man on three occasions (533). Ross (466) reported four patients who had striking ocular changes after taking Pyribenzamine. After daily doses of 75–100 mg. for periods varying from two days to one month, three patients noted symptoms of blurred vision, two had refractive changes and one, diffuse corneal edema.

*Circulatory and hemopoietic systems.*—Since there are frequent clinical reminders that the antihistamines have an excitatory action on the heart, Mackmull (371) studied the effect of intravenously administered Benadryl in normal subjects. The doses used were 50–300 mg., and the commonest reaction was dizziness, which was always present after doses of 100 mg. or more. Tingling, sleepiness and thick speech were common with high doses. The systolic and diastolic blood pressures were moderately elevated for about an hour, and the heart rate was increased. With 200 or 300 mg., electrocardiographic changes of significance were present. The author concluded that fairly large doses of Benadryl

given intravenously might be dangerous in hypertension or heart disease. Boyd and his associates (53) administered Thephorin in daily doses of 75–600 mg. for one to four weeks to 100 nonatopic persons. Though the usual side effects from Thephorin were found, no significant changes were noted in the electrocardiogram, the nonprotein nitrogen of the blood, the blood count or the urine. Gelfand (222) reported that hypertension was produced in a patient by Benadryl.

Following withdrawal of Benadryl, several patients with rheumatic fever who had taken the drug for three weeks experienced a peculiar syndrome, consisting of facial erythema, throbbing frontal headache, anorexia and nausea and vomiting (545).

Several cases of agranulocytosis have been reported. One case in a girl, 13, who developed agranulocytosis after taking Neo-Antergan for three weeks, is described by Clement and Godlewski (88). Blanton and Owens (40) reported the occurrence of a similar blood change in a man, 74, who had been taking Pyribenzamine for a period of eight weeks. Another case due to Pyribenzamine was reported by Cahan and co-workers (71) and they mentioned a similar incident reported by their colleagues. Still another case was cited in a report of the Council on Pharmacy and Chemistry of the American Medical Association (102), and two more have since been reported (267a, 382a). Drake (139) described a case of agranulocytosis in a man, 81 years old, who took Diatrin in daily doses of 150 mg. for 20 days. The total white cell count dropped to 1,000, with almost complete absence of granulocytes. The bone marrow



counts also showed granulocytic depression. Three cases of hemolytic anemia, reported by Crumbley (110a), were diagnosed 10, 14 and two months, respectively, following frequent, average doses of an antihistamine. In two cases Benadryl was taken and in the third, Pyribenzamine. In all three, the blood picture returned rapidly to normal after discontinuing use of the drug.

*Skin.*—Rashes from the systemic or topical use of antihistamines occur at times. These skin rashes probably comprise two main types, one due to a true allergy and the other to the irritative action of the drug. The second is most apt to occur when the antihistamine is applied topically, particularly when the skin is delicate or highly inflamed and when the nature of the medicament or base is chemically irritating. The allergic type of rash is due principally to topical use of the drugs and is usually a true contact type of sensitization.

Two instances of eruptions in patients with atopic dermatitis who were taking Pyribenzamine orally were described by Epstein (156). In one the eruption resembled the eczematoid type and in the other, pityriasis rosea. In both patients the rash cleared after discontinuing the drug and appeared on readministration. Rattner and Griffin (435) described a case of dermatitis that appeared on two occasions after the ingestion of a single tablet of Pyribenzamine. Neither Benadryl nor Antistine produced dermatitis in the patient. The authors stated that they had encountered two similar cases. Eczematoid dermatitis following the ingestion of Pyribenzamine was reported by Harris and Shure (264). The rash could be reproduced by subsequent administration of the drug.

Cutaneous, intracutaneous, patch and reagin tests were negative. A morbilliform rash occurring in a 53 year old man who had been taking 200 mg. of Pyribenzamine for one week was also reported (410). This rash was followed by desquamation and development of lesions of angioma simplex. In one patient, a rash which appeared after Trimeton was followed two days later by a severe generalized eruption after intravenous administration of Benadryl. The patch test was positive with Trimeton but it was negative with Benadryl (157).

London and Moody (356) reported the occurrence of urticaria in a young man on two occasions after ingestion of 50 or 100 mg. of Pyribenzamine. The patient was not allergic to the excipient. Pratt (430) also described a case of urticaria due to Pyribenzamine.

Sherman and Cooke (501) have made a worthwhile contribution to the study of the specificity of the drugs concerned in the production of these dermatitides. They studied three patients with contact dermatitis from antihistamines. In two the dermatitis was due to Pyribenzamine ointment and in the third to Antistine eye drops. The third patient had an exacerbation following use of Pyribenzamine by mouth. All three patients had a past history of allergy and two had contact dermatitis from other causes. Patch tests were made with the following: Pyribenzamine, Neo-Antergan, Thenylene, Antistine, Diatrin, Neohetramine, Trimeton, Benadryl and Thephorin. One patient reacted only to Pyribenzamine, another reacted to Pyribenzamine, Thenylene and Neo-Antergan while the third reacted to all but Thephorin.

Contact dermatitis from Pyribenzamine ointment was



reported by Strauss (524), and by Sulzberger and associates (530) who noted that two of 90 patients treated with topical application of Pyribenzamine developed sensitivity to it.

Thephorin appears to possess an even greater tendency to sensitization. Ellis and Bundick (151) stated that of 50 patients with chronic pruritic dermatoses treated topically with Thephorin ointment or lotion for an average of 50 days, 14 became worse. Patch tests with Thephorin were made on five of the 14 and all gave positive reactions. Reiss and Kern (438) report a 2.5 per cent incidence of contact-type reactions among 120 patients using Thephorin ointment. A sensitivity index of 16 per cent was claimed by D'Avanzo (121).

A case of localized dermatitis from Antistine eye drops was reported by Mosko and Peterson (401). The reaction to a patch test was positive.

*Deaths.*—The antihistamines are potent drugs, and it has been amply demonstrated that large doses can be fatal. It has been claimed, in addition, that even moderate doses may influence the fatal outcome in some situations. Although only a relatively few fatalities have been recorded in the medical literature, many more deaths suspected to be due to the antihistamines have been described in the newspapers and probably a good many others escape unnoticed. To the cost in lives from these drugs must also be charged all those accidental deaths from automobiles or other machinery used by persons who are in a dozey state from the effects of the drugs. For example, we know of an instance in an Eastern city in which a man, feeling groggy while un-

der the influence of self-administered antihistamine "cold" tablets, drove into another automobile, killing a man and wife.

In most instances the course in acute, fatal intoxication has been one of drowsiness, convulsions, respiratory depression, cyanosis and very high fever, followed by unconsciousness and death. Death usually occurs in six to 15 hours, although more rapid termination has been reported. Postmortem findings show cerebral edema, pulmonary congestion and congestion of the liver and kidneys.

The use of antihistamines, particularly in large doses, in status asthmaticus may not be without danger. Blackman and Hayes (39) reported a case in which a 47 year old woman in status asthmaticus was given two doses of 100 mg. of Benadryl four hours apart. An hour after the second dose the patient became cyanotic, and despite Demerol and other medication cyanosis became more intense, hypertension developed and she died in coma. Of course, a doubt could be raised about the role of Benadryl in this case. It is possible that the other medication or even the asthma itself may have been chiefly responsible. A hepatorenal syndrome, evidenced by jaundice and anuria, from the use of 200 mg. of Antergan resulted in death (347). The patient had had a similar syndrome five months previously with the same amount of the drug.

Coffin (94) reported the case of a 15 month old infant who took 1,500 mg. of Antergan, went into convulsion and coma and died in six hours. A child, aged 2, took 400 mg. of Benadryl, and drowsiness, convulsions,



depression of respiration, cyanosis and high fever developed (122). Unconsciousness followed and the baby died 13 hours after ingestion of the drug. Autopsy findings consisted chiefly of cerebral edema and softening and passive congestion of the liver and kidneys. Tobias (539) described the case of a 21 month old child who swallowed 600 mg. of Anthisan (Neo-Antergan) and lost consciousness within two hours. Profuse catarrhal discharge from the respiratory tract and epileptiform convulsions followed, and death occurred less than three hours after taking the pills. Another instance of death from Neo-Antergan is reported by Deichman (126) in a girl, aged 2, who took 1,300 mg. of the drug, became unconscious, had convulsions and succumbed within 45 minutes.

An editorial (145) in *New York Medicine* warns of the dangers of the antihistaminic drugs to children, particularly when large doses are ingested, and of the hazard of leaving these drugs where children may obtain them. Two fatalities were mentioned. One was that of a 2 year old child who consumed the contents of a bottle containing 19 capsules of an antihistamine (the variety not mentioned). He quickly developed convulsions and became unconscious, his temperature rose to 107.4 F. and he died in 13 hours. Autopsy findings were similar to those found in heat stroke. Another 16 month old infant who took 100 mg. of an antihistamine "which is the equivalent of about four tablets generally used for the prevention of the common cold," promptly developed convulsions, followed by a temperature of 107 F., and died in 15 hours.

Death in a 16 month old infant from 100 mg. of Thenylene was reported by Rives and co-workers (447). Two hours after taking the drug there was projectile vomiting, followed by listlessness, convulsions and intermittent unconsciousness; rectal temperature rose to 107.2 F. Treatment given included chloral hydrate, oxygen, dextrose and venesection. There was severe nitrogen retention. The child died in 15 hours, and autopsy showed cerebral edema and upper nephron nephrosis. An editorial (146) in the *Lancet* stated that several children (in England) have died from eating antihistamines as sweets.

From the foregoing and other unpublished information one may construct the following picture of fatal antihistamine poisoning. Young children are probably particularly susceptible. The major symptoms are convulsions, unconsciousness, respiratory depression and hyperpyrexia; the pathologic picture is that of cerebral edema and passive congestion of the liver and kidneys. Death may occur in 45 minutes to 15 hours. The effect of treatment seems to be negligible and the nature of the proper treatment appears to be in doubt.

The treatment of antihistamine poisoning has not been established. In moderate intoxication, when the major symptom is drowsiness, respiratory stimulants such as caffeine or amphetamine are probably most indicated. When excitation or convulsions are present, sedatives such as barbiturates would probably be the choice. Use of morphine and similar respiratory depressants is probably unsafe. It is not surprising that the use of histamine has been suggested (Schwartzberg). An editorial (146)



in *Lancet* stated that "the obvious antidote is histamine acid phosphate, injected subcutaneously in doses of 0.1 mg. per kilogram of bodyweight." The use of large doses of histamine is open to doubt, because it has been shown in guinea pigs that when large doses of antihistamine are used to prevent bronchospasm from large doses of histamine, the animals later develop other histaminic effects such as coma, peptic ulcer, etc. The issue must remain an open one.

### SELF-MEDICATION—ITS HAZARDS

The present trend of self-medication with the antihistamines, which has become widespread because of permission for over-the-counter sales granted to some of the products by the Food and Drug Administration, has become a real menace to public health. It encourages self-diagnosis and leads to much neglect of proper diagnosis and correct treatment. A "cold," which the sufferer is assured will be completely stopped by the antihistamines, may be not a cold but scarlet fever, virus pneumonitis, sinus infection or other even more serious disease.

The dangers of self-treatment with antihistamines procured over-the-counter are several. Self-treatment results in neglect of proper treatment. It encourages carelessness in the use of these drugs. A large part of the population is not likely to study the fine print of directions on the label, nor heed them if read. Often two or four or a dozen of the tablets are taken, frequently with serious toxic effects. In the ignorant, drug-befuddled or suicide-intentioned person who may take a large num-

ber of the pills, the possibility of a fatal outcome is evident. Even if nothing serious happens from such self-medication, the unmanaged and unexpected sedation and loss of alertness may result disastrously when the person drives an automobile or manipulates other machinery. Automobile accidents from such causes are bound to occur.

One of the commonest hazards of self-medication is that of poisoning in children who ingest tablets which are carelessly left about the house. A large percentage of the recorded fatalities have been of this type. Young children appear to be particularly susceptible to serious effects from large doses of antihistamines and are also likely to swallow a number of such pills if easily accessible.

It has been argued by some that such carelessness and overdosing might occur when these drugs are obtained on the physician's prescription. It is argued further that, before over-the-counter sales were permitted, counter prescribing of antihistamines had been fairly common. The partial truth of both these arguments is admitted. However, it is common knowledge that the patient has respect for the potency of a drug which the doctor prescribes for him, and for which specific directions are noted on the label. He is not as likely to overdose himself, nor is he apt to leave the package on the kitchen table for easy access by children. Furthermore, more often than not, the physician will have had the opportunity to explain to the patient the possible reactions from the drug, the advisability of not driving an automobile after the first time or two the medicine is



taken and similar precautions. Procurement of antihistamines from the pharmacist without permission of a government agency designed to protect the public health has a different connotation from unrestricted over-the-counter sales. In the first instance the purchaser knows that he obtains the drug surreptitiously. Knowing that the law requires a prescription, he is inclined to have respect for the potency of the medication and to exhibit greater care in the use and handling of the antihistamine.

The recognized specialists in allergy would be expected to constitute a body of people who have had the most experience with the antihistamines and their toxic properties. In preparation for an invited appearance of one of us (S.M.F.) to speak on the subject of the antihistamines before a meeting of the Council on Pharmacy and Chemistry of the American Medical Association a questionnaire was directed to 180 Fellows of the American Academy of Allergy. Part of the results of this inquiry has been published (177). The summarized results from 153 replies indicated that about 40 million people were expected to take these drugs. (The actual number is probably much smaller because of counter-publicity by physicians and agencies interested in public health.) It was estimated that about 17 million would have mild sedation and eight million, severe. This estimate was based on full therapeutic doses. On one-half size doses (the usual dose of over-the-counter drugs) the figures on sedation would be about 10 million. Of 144 replies, 131 allergists expressed the opinion that from their experience disregard for label warnings is common with drugs procured over-the-counter. A total

of 143 out of 151 were of the opinion that remote toxicity of these drugs was not sufficiently known to justify over-the-counter sales. Of 146, there were 138 who thought that, in children, coma, convulsions and death might follow the ingestion of several antihistamine tablets from a package. Of 153 replies on the question of whether antihistamines should be permitted to be purchased over-the-counter, 149 believed that they should not.

The exaggerated and misleading claims of much of the advertising on these over-the-counter products have resulted in considerable harm to the public. This blatant advertising has moved the Federal Trade Commission to issue complaints against some of the companies involved in promotion of these sales. In essence, the complaints charge that the claims for the prompt and complete relief of colds by the antihistamines are not established and that claims for safety are false. Following a recent hearing, several companies agreed to modify their advertising. It should be made clear that the function of the F.T.C. is to regulate the advertising and labeling; it has no jurisdiction over the actual permission of sales of the drugs. The latter faculty is under the management of the Food and Drug Administration. In view of the growing number of fatalities resulting directly or indirectly from the promiscuous sales of the antihistamines and the prevailing opinion of the medical profession that these drugs are too dangerous for such promiscuous use, it may be that the F.D.A. will see fit to rescind the permission for over-the-counter sales.



\* \* \* \* \*

The antihistamines have constituted a valuable advance in the progress of the management of allergic disease and certain other manifestations due to histaminic action. They have been productive of comfort to many sufferers who previously had no ready source of relief. These drugs have been of greatest help in seasonal hay fever and of considerable aid also in perennial vasomotor rhinitis. In urticaria and angioneurotic edema the antihistamines have proved to be the most effective palliative treatment. In most other pruritic dermatoses they have been of considerable benefit. Used topically, they have also been helpful in difficult dermatitic, nasal and bronchial conditions.

It is essential that proper appreciation be given the fact that these drugs are only of symptomatic benefit, that their activity is of short duration, that they do not help all stages and all varieties of allergy, that they possess toxic potentialities and are highly dangerous if used in excessive doses or if used carelessly or self-prescribed. Many antihistaminic compounds have been marketed—perhaps too many. But the ideal antihistamine has not yet been produced. Such a drug should have all or most of the following characteristics. (1) It should be of very high potency. (2) It should possess a very low toxicity index. The important consideration is that the therapeutic/toxicity ratio should be so favorable that, when needed, use of many times the average therapeutic dose should be possible. (3) Duration of action should be prolonged. (4) The molecular structure might in-

clude other antiallergic, such as sympathomimetic, actions. Perhaps such an antihistamine is not a possibility. For example, it is conceivable that some of the toxic actions of the antihistamines are dependent on the diversion of the displaced histamine to other tissues.

Even the ideal antihistaminic drug would not comprise the total ultimate goal of solving the histamine problem. There is still room for approaches to the disarming of histaminic action other than by competition. Effective methods of destroying histamine by enzymatic degradation might achieve this end. The prevention of the production of histamine from its precursors—the concept of antihistaminogenesis—is also a possibility.

More recently, experience with ACTH and cortisone has indicated a striking clinical effectiveness in some allergic conditions. It is rather apparent that the mechanism of this action is not based on antihistaminogenesis, histamine competition or histamine destruction. Although the mechanism of action is not definitely known, it is reasonably certain that these hormones produce a chemical or physicochemical alteration in the pathologic tissues to make them less susceptible to histamine effects. The hope of modifying tissue reactivity in general, then, leads to a new approach in the study of treatment of allergic disease.

And finally, there is almost universal agreement that histaminic action is not the sole mechanism involved in atopy and is probably of no importance at all in many other types of hypersensitiveness. In a large group of patients, the management of allergy along allergic lines, including diagnosis, elimination and desensitization,



must not be by-passed or ignored in favor of the antihistamines. In addition, progress must continue by research in clinical allergy and by investigations in basic mechanisms involved in etiology and therapy. The concentration of this manual on the subject of the antihistaminic compounds and the omission of a consideration of the general subject of allergy should not be regarded as an indication that these drugs have solved the allergic problem. It happens that this is not a treatise on allergy. This is a book on the antihistamines.

# APPENDIX. PROPRIETARY ANTIHISTAMINIC PREPARATIONS

ANTIISTAMINE	PHARMACEUTICAL COMPANY	TRADE NAME	DISPENSED AS	INGREDIENTS
Antistine (Antazoline hydrochloride)	Ciba	Antistine Antistine  Antistine- Privine	Tablet Ophthalmic solution Nasal solution	100 mg. 0.5 %  0.5 % + 0.025 % Privine HCl
Benadryl (Diphenhydra- mine hydro- chloride)	Parke, Davis	Kapseals Benadryl Benadryl Benadryl Emplets Steri-vial Benadryl Elixir Benadryl Benadryl Cream Benylin Ex- pectorant	Capsule  Capsule Enteric-coated tablet Injectable  Liquid  Ointment  Liquid    Lotion Tablet	50 mg.  25 mg. 50 mg. 10 mg./ml.  10 mg./4 ml., 14 % alcohol 2 %  each oz. = 80 mg. + 12 gr. ammonium chloride + 5 gr. sodium citrate + 2 gr. chlo- roform + 1/10 gr. menthol, 5 % alcohol 1 % in calamine 25 mg. + 100 mg. amino- phylline
	G. D. Searle	Caladryl Hydryllin		





# APPENDIX. PROPRIETARY ANTIHISTAMINIC PREPARATIONS (Continued)

ANTI-HISTAMINE	PHARMACEUTICAL COMPANY	TRADE NAME	DISPENSED AS	INGREDIENTS
Chlor-Trimeton (Chlorphen- pyridamine maleate)	Schering	Chlor- Trimeton Coricidin	Tablet	4 mg.
Decapryn (Doxylamine succinate)	Wm. S. Merrell	Decapryn Decapryn Decapryn with APC	Tablet Liquid Tablet	2 mg. + 3½ gr. aspirin + 2½ gr. acetophenetidin + ½ gr. caffeine 12.5 and 25 mg. 5 ml. = 6.25 mg. 6 mg. + 230 mg. aspirin + 150 mg. acetophenetidin + 30 mg. caffeine 5 ml. = 6 mg. + 300 mg. sodium salicylate + 15 mg. caffeine 5 mg./ml.
		Decapryn Compound	Liquid	
		Decapryn Minergic Mercodol with Decapryn	Injectable  Liquid	
		Nethaprin	Liquid (also Capsule)	30 ml. = 36 mg. + 10 mg. dihydrocodeinone bitartrate + 100 mg. methylethyl- amino-phenylpropanol HCl (Nethamine) + 1.2 Gm. sodium citrate 5ml. = 6 mg. + 25 mg. methylethylamino-phenyl- propanol HCl (Nethamine) + 60 mg. theophylline ami- noisobutanol



Diatriin (N,N-dimethyl- N'-phenyl-N'-(2- thienylmethyl)- ethylenediamine monohydrochloride)	Wm. R. Warner	Diatriin	Tablet	50 mg.
Dramamine (see Benadryl)				
Histadyl (Thenylpyramine hydrochloride)	Abbott	Thenylene Thenylfred	Tablet Tablet	25, 50 and 100 mg. 50 mg. + 25 mg. ephedrine HCl
		Thenylene and Desoxyn Thenylene Cream	Tablet Ointment	50 mg. + 2.5 mg. desoxy- ephedrine HCl 2%
		Thenylene- APC	Capsule	25 mg. + 230 mg. aspirin + 150 mg. acetophenetidin + 30 mg. caffeine 50 mg.
	Blue Line Chemical Chilcott (Mal- tine Co.)	Methapyrilene hydrochloride Pentryl	Tablet Tablet	50 mg. + 16 mg. ephedrine HCl + 16 mg. pentobarbi- tal sodium 50 mg. + 16 mg. ephedrine HCl + 16 mg. pentobarbi- tal sodium
		Pentryl	Enteric-coated tablet	25 mg. + 8 mg. ephedrine HCl + 10 mg. ascorbic acid
	Cole Chemical	Histafed	Capsule	

# APPENDIX. PROPRIETARY ANTIHISTAMINIC PREPARATIONS (Continued)

ANTI-HISTAMINE	PHARMACEUTICAL COMPANY	TRADE NAME	DISPENSED AS	INGREDIENTS
Histadyl ( <i>cont.</i> )	Eli Lilly	Pulvules Histadyl	Capsule	25, 50 and 100 mg.
		Histadyl Cream	Injectable Ointment	20 mg./ml. 2%
		Histadyl Cream	Ointment	2% + 0.5% Surfacaine (cyclomethycaine)
		Histadyl- Surfacaine		
		Enseals	Enteric-coated tablet	50 mg.
		Histadyl Histadyl	Ophthalmic ointment	0.5%
		Pulvules Histadyl-ASA Compound	Tablet	25 mg. + 3½ gr. aspirin + 2½ gr. acetophenetidin + ½ gr. caffeine
		Pulvules Histadyl- Ephedrine HCl	Tablet	25 mg. + 8 mg. ephedrine HCl; 50 mg. + 16 mg. ephedrine HCl
		Solution Histadyl	Liquid	0.5%
		Histadyl Histadyl	Liquid	4 mg./ml.
		Histadyl Compound- Ephedrine and Codeine	Liquid	each oz. = 80 mg. + 1 gr. codeine + ½ gr. ephedrine



Flint, Eaton	Histadyl-Surfacaine	Lotion	2% + 0.5% Surfacaine (cyclomethycaine)
	Hista-Clopane Pulvules	Capsule	25 mg. + 12.5 mg. cyclopentamine
	Pyrathyn Capathyn	Capsule Tablet	50 mg. 20 mg. + 230 mg. aspirin + 150 mg. acetophenetidin + 30 mg. caffeine
McNeil	Pyracol	Liquid	each oz. = 160 mg. + 778 mg. ammonium chloride + 648 mg. citric acid + 130 mg. chloroform + 6 mg. menthol
	Methoxylylene	Tablet	50 mg. + 2.5 mg. racemic desoxyephedrine HCl
	Corenil	Tablet	25 mg. + 7.5 mg. extract belladonna + 1.25 mg. racemic desoxyephedrine HCl
S. E. Massengill	Semikon Semikon	Tablet Enteric-coated tablet	50 mg. 50 and 100 mg.
	Dasikon	Capsule	25 mg. + 30 mg. caffeine + 200 mg. aspirin + 120 mg. acetophenetidin + 0.06 mg. atropine sulfate

# APPENDIX. PROPRIETARY ANTIHISTAMINIC PREPARATIONS (Continued)

ANTIHISTAMINE	PHARMACEUTICAL COMPANY	TRADE NAME	DISPENSED AS	INGREDIENTS
Histadyl ( <i>cont.</i> )		Sedacof Expectorant	Liquid	5 ml. = 15 mg. + 200 mg. sodium citrate + 100 mg. ammonium chloride + 10 mg. ephedrine HCl + 1 mg. antimony potassium tartrate + aromatics qs.
	Pitman-Moore	Cohistine	Tablet	25 mg. + 225 mg. aspirin + 160 mg. acetophenetidin + 1 mg. dextro-amphetamine sulfate
	Sharp & Dohme	Proketal Compound	Capsule	25 mg. + 230 mg. aspirin + 150 mg. acetophenetidin + 30 mg. caffeine
		Proketal Compound with Codeine	Capsule	25 mg. + 230 mg. aspirin + 150 mg. acetophenetidin + 30 mg. caffeine + 15 mg. codeine phosphate
	Smith, Kline & French	Nuclon	Capsule	37.5 mg. thenylpyramine fumarate (= 25 mg. of the HCl) + 1.25 mg. dextro-amphetamine sulfate + 2½ gr. aspirin
Neo-Antergan (Pyranisamine maleate)	Buffington's	Paraminyl Maleate	Tablet	50 mg.



Otis Clapp	Dolopar	Tablet	32 mg. + 225 mg. aspirin + 162 mg. acetophenetidin + 15 mg. caffeine + 1 minum tinct. gelsemium 25 mg.
Columbus	Pyranisamine Maleate Pyramal Pyrasal	Tablet Tablet Tablet	50 mg. 25 mg. + 325 mg. aspirin + 16 mg. caffeine 25 and 50 mg.
Direct Sales	Pyranisamine Maleate	Tablet	
Merck Premo	Neo-Antergan Pyranisamine Maleate Neo Cafotan	Tablet Tablet Tablet	25 and 50 mg. 50 mg.
Professional Drug Service	Neomine Acetomine	Tablet Tablet	$\frac{1}{4}$ gr. + $\frac{1}{2}$ gr. caffeine + $2\frac{1}{2}$ gr. acetophenetidin + $3\frac{1}{2}$ gr. aspirin 25 mg. 25 mg. + $3\frac{1}{2}$ gr. aspirin + $2\frac{1}{2}$ gr. acetophenetidin + $\frac{1}{2}$ gr. caffeine 25 and 50 mg.
Rexall	Pyranisamine Maleate Monhiston with APC	Tablet Tablet	25 mg. + $2\frac{1}{2}$ gr. acetophe- netidin + $3\frac{1}{2}$ gr. aspirin + $\frac{1}{2}$ gr. caffeine 25 and 50 mg.
William H. Rorer	Thylogen	Tablet	

# APPENDIX. PROPRIETARY ANTIHISTAMINIC PREPARATIONS (Continued)

ANTIHISTAMINE	PHARMACEUTICAL COMPANY	TRADE NAME	DISPENSED AS	INGREDIENTS
Neo-Antergan (cont.)	Smith-Dorsey	Pyranisamine Maleate PPA Capsule	Tablet	50 mg.
		Pye Capsule	Capsule	25 mg. + 1 gr. acetophenetidin + 5 gr. aspirin
		Antopic Cream	Ointment	50 mg. + 10 mg. ephedrine sulfate
		Renstamine	Tablet	5% + calamine + zinc oxide + benzocaine
	R. J. Strassenburgh	Renstamine	Liquid	25 mg. + 2.5 mg. amphetamine phosphate
		Pyra-Maleate	Tablet	5 ml. = 10 mg. + 1 mg. amphetamine phosphate
		Dexa-pyramine	Capsule	25 and 50 mg.
	Walker Vitamin	Dexa-pyramine	Injectable	25 mg. + 2 mg. dextro-amphetamine HCl + 2½ gr. aspirin + ¼ gr. caffeine + 2½ gr. acetophenetidin each ml. = 25 mg. + 2 mg. dextro-amphetamine HCl + 0.3% phenol + dist. water
		Histacin	Capsule	qs. 20 mg. + 180 mg. aspirin + 120 mg. acetophenetidin + 60 mg. caffeine + 30 mg. ascorbic acid



(Pyranisamine 8-bromtheophyllinate; Pyrabrom)	E. L. Patch	Glybrom	Tablet	50 mg.
Neohetramine (Thonzylamine hydrochloride)	Wyeth	Neohetramine Neohetramine Neohetramine Cream	Tablet Liquid Ointment	25, 50 and 100 mg. 6.25 mg./ml. 2%
Pyribenzamine (Tripelennamine hydrochloride)	Ciba	Pyribenzamine Pyribenzamine Pyribenzamine Elixir Pyribenzamine Ointment Pyribenzamine Cream Pyribenzamine-Ephedrine Pyribenzamine Expectorant with Ephedrine Pyribenzamine Pyribenzamine Pyribenzamine Pyrrolazote Pyrrolazote Elixir	Tablet Enteric-coated Liquid Ointment Ointment Ointment Tablet Liquid Nasal Solution Injectable Nebulizer Tablet Liquid	50 mg. 50 mg. 7.5 mg. (citrate) /ml. 2% (petrolatum base) 2% (water-washable base) 25 mg. + 12 mg. ephedrine sulfate each 4 ml. = 30 mg. (citrate) + 10 mg. ephedrine sulfate + 80 mg. ammonium chloride 0.5% 25 mg./ml. 0.5% 50 mg. each ml. = 2.5 mg. + 10% alcohol + tolu balsam, glycerin and aromatics
Pyrrolazote (Pyrathiazine)	Upjohn			

# APPENDIX. PROPRIETARY ANTIHISTAMINIC PREPARATIONS (Continued)

ANTI-HISTAMINE	PHARMACEUTICAL COMPANY	TRADE NAME	DISPENSED AS	INGREDIENTS
Pyrrolazote ( <i>cont.</i> )		Pyrrolazote	Laminated Tablet	50 mg. (enteric-coated 25 mg. core)
		Pyrroxate	Capsule	12.5 mg. + 25 mg. Ortho-phenetidin + 2½ gr. acetophenetidin + 3½ gr. aspirin + ½ gr. caffeine
Tagathen (see Chlorothen)				
Thenfadil	Winthrop-Stearns	Neo-Synephrine	Nasal Solution	0.1% + 0.25% Neo-Synephrine
(N,N-dimethyl-N'-(3-thenyl)-N'-(2-pyridyl)ethylenediamine hydrochloride)		Thenfadil		
Thenylene (see Histadyl)				
(Methapyrilene hydrochloride)				
Thephorin (Phenindamine tartrate)	Hoffmann-La Roche	Thephorin	Tablet	25 mg.
		Thephorin	Liquid	10 mg./4 ml.
		Thephorin	Ointment	5% in carbowax base
		Thephorin	Lotion	5%
		Thephorin-AC	Tablet	10 mg. + 160 mg. aspirin + 160 mg. acetophenetidin + 15 mg. caffeine



Trimeton (Propenpyrid- amine)	Organon	Thephorin Expectorant	Liquid	4 ml. = 10 mg. + 4 mg. codeine phosphate + 4 mg. papaverine hydrochloride + 50 mg. ammonium chloride + 0.016 ml. chloroform
		Thephorin	Injectable	12.5 mg./ml.
	Schering	Cehistra  Trimeton Trimeton Maleate Elixir Trimeton Maleate Cream	Effervescent Tablet  Tablet Liquid  Ointment	10 mg. (maleate) + 100 mg. ascorbic acid + 320 mg. aspirin + 1,820 mg. sodium bicarbonate, calcium hydrox- ide, citric acid  25 mg. 4 ml. = 7.5 mg., 7% alco- hol 3%

## References

1. Aaron, T. H.: Iontophoresis of Pyribenzamine in allergic rhinitis, *Canad. M. A. J.* 61:301, 1949.
2. Aaron, T. H., and Abramson, H. A.: Inhibition of histamine whealing in human skin by Pyribenzamine hydrochloride using iontophoretic technique, *Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med.* 65:272, 1947.
3. Aaron, T. H.; Peck, S. M., and Abramson, H. A.: Iontophoresis of Pyribenzamine hydrochloride in pruritic dermatoses, *J. Invest. Dermat.* 10:85, 1948.
4. Abel, J. J., and Kubota, S.: On the presence of histamine ( $\beta$ -iminazolyethylamine) in the hypophysis cerebri and other tissues of the body and its occurrence among the hydrolytic decomposition products of proteins, *J. Pharmacol. & Exper. Therap.* 13:243, 1919.
5. Abramson, H. A., and Engel, M.: Skin reactions: Lymphatic escape following electrophoresis of histamine and epinephrine, *J. Invest. Dermat.* 1:65, 1938.
6. Ackermann, D.: Zur Kenntnis des Histamins und seiner Beziehung zur Anaphylaxie, *Naturwissenschaften* 27:515, 1939.
7. Ackermann, D., and Kutscher, F.: Untersuchungen über die Physiologische Wirkung einer Secalbase und des Imidazolyethylamines, *Ztschr. f. Biol.* 54:387, 1910.
8. Adlersberg, D.: Newer advances in gout, *Bull. New York Acad. Med.* 25:661, 1949.
9. Alvord, E. C.; Correll, J. W.; Ladd, A., and Kellner, A.: The effect of Pyribenzamine in beeswax on experimental



- meningoencephalomyelitis in the guinea pig, *J. Immunol.* 60:345, 1948.
10. Ameline, A.: Traitement de certaines dysménorrhées par les antihistaminiques de synthèse, *Presse méd.* 56:821, 1948.
  11. Anderson, L. T.; Gakenheimer, W. C.; Rosenblum, C., and Smith, E. H.: Spectrophotometric assay method for pyranisamine maleate, *J. Am. Pharm. A.* 38:373, 1949.
  12. Anrep, G. V.; Ayadi, M. S.; Barsoum, G. S.; Smith, J. R., and Talaat, M. M.: The excretion of histamine in urine, *J. Physiol.* 103:155, 1944.
  13. Anrep, G. V.; Barsoum, G. S., and Ibrahim, A.: The histaminolytic action of blood during pregnancy, *J. Physiol.* 106:379, 1947.
  14. Arbesman, C. E.: The pharmacology, physiology, and clinical evaluation of the new antihistaminic drugs (Pyribenzamine and Benadryl), *New York State J. Med.* 47:1775, 1947.
  15. Arbesman, C. E.: Comparative studies of several antihistaminic drugs, *J. Allergy* 19:178, 1948.
  16. Arbesman, C. E.; Cohen, V. L., and Osgood, H.: Pyribenzamine versus specific hyposensitization in the treatment of pollinosis: A comparative study, *J. Allergy* 18:311, 1947.
  17. Arbesman, C. E.; Koepf, G. F., and Lenzner, A. R.: Clinical studies with N'pyridyl, N'benzyl, dimethylethylenediamine monohydrochloride (Pyribenzamine), *J. Allergy* 17:275, 1946.
  18. Arbesman, C. E.; Koepf, G. F., and Miller, G. E.: Some antianaphylactic properties of N'pyridyl, N'benzyl, dimethylethylenediamine monohydrochloride (Pyribenzamine), *J. Allergy* 17:203, 1946.
  19. Arbesman, C. E.; Neter, E., and Becker, C. F.: The effect of Pyribenzamine, Neohetramine and rutin on reversed anaphylaxis in guinea pigs, *J. Allergy* 21:25, 1950.
  20. Arminio, J. J., and Sweet, C. C.: The prophylaxis and treatment of the common cold with Neohetramine (thonzylamine hydrochloride), *Indust. Med. & Surg.* 18:509, 1949.
  21. Ashford, C. A.; Heller, H., and Smart, G. A.: The effect of antihistamine substances on gastric secretion in man, *Brit. J. Pharmacol.* 4:157, 1949.
  22. Baer, R. L., and Sulzberger, M. B.: Pyribenzamine in the treatment of itching skin conditions, *J. Invest. Dermat.* 7:147, 1946.

23. Baer, R. L., and Sulzberger, M. B.: Effect of Pyribenzamine on dermographism (urticaria factitia), *J. Invest. Dermat.* 7:201, 1946.
24. Bain, W. A.: The quantitative comparison of histamine antagonists in man, *Proc. Roy. Soc. Med.* 42:615, 1949.
25. Bain, W. A.; Hellier, F. F., and Warin, R. P.: Some aspects of the action of histamine antagonists, *Lancet* 2:964, 1948.
26. Baraud, J.; Genevois, L.; Mandillon, G., and Ringenbach, G.: Dosage de l'histamine dans le sang au cours de diverses intoxications, *Compt. rend. Acad. d. sc.* 222:760, 1946.
27. Barger, G., and Dale, H. H.:  $\beta$ -iminazolylethylamine, a depressor constituent of intestinal mucosa, *J. Physiol.* 41:499, 1911.
28. Bartosch, R.; Feldberg, W., and Nagel, E.: Das Freiwerden eines Histaminähnlichen Stoffes bei der Anaphylaxie des Meerschweinchens, *Arch. f. d. ges. Physiol.* 230:129, 1932.
29. Beeler, J. W.; Tillisch, J. H., and Popp, W. C.: A new drug in the treatment of radiation sickness, *Proc. Staff Meet., Mayo Clin.* 24:477, 1949.
30. Beiler, J. M.; Brendel, R.; Graff, M., and Martin, G. J.: Effect of metabolite antagonists on histidine decarboxylase, *J. Am. Pharm. A.* 38:315, 1949.
31. Berger, F. M.: The treatment of paralysis agitans with Thephorin, *New York State J. Med.* 49:1817, 1949.
32. Bernstein, T. B., and Feinberg, S. M.: Histamine antagonists: XII. 2-(N-dimethylaminoethyl-N-p-methoxybenzyl)-aminopyrimidine hydrochloride; clinical and pharmacologic results, *J. Allergy* 19:393, 1948.
33. Bernstein, T. B., and Feinberg, S. M.: Histamine antagonists: XIV. An experimental and clinical study of N,N-dimethyl-N'-2-thiazolyl-N'-p-methoxybenzyl-ethylenediamine hydrochloride (194-B), *J. Lab. & Clin. Med.* 34:1007, 1949.
34. Bernstein, T. B.; Rose, J. M., and Feinberg, S. M.: New anti-histaminic drugs (Benadryl, Pyribenzamine and Neo-Antergan) in hay fever and other allergic conditions, *Illinois M. J.* 92:90, 1947.
35. Best, C. H.: The disappearance of histamine from autolysing lung tissue, *J. Physiol.* 67:256, 1929.
36. Best, C. H.; Dale, H. H.; Dudley, H. W., and Thorpe, W. V.: The nature of the vaso-dilator constituents of certain tissue extracts, *J. Physiol.* 62:397, 1927.



37. Best, C. H., and McHenry, E. W.: A note on histaminase, *Canad. M. A. J.* 43:163, 1940.
38. Bignall, J. R., and Crofton, J.: Antihistamine drugs in treatment of nausea and vomiting due to streptomycin, *Brit. M. J.* 1:13, 1949.
39. Blackman, N. S., and Hayes, J. C.: Fatality associated with Benadryl therapy, *J. Allergy* 19:390, 1948.
40. Blanton, W., and Owens, M. E. B., Jr.: Granulocytopenia due probably to "Pyribenzamine," *J. A. M. A.* 134:454, 1947.
41. Blumenthal, J. S.: The antihistamine drugs in the treatment of hay fever in the adult, *Journal Lancet* 69:215, 1949.
42. Boquet, A.: "Substances antihistaminiques" et réactions tuberculiniques, *Ann. Inst. Pasteur* 69:55, 1943.
43. Bordley, J. E.; Carey, R. A.; Harvey, A. M.; Howard, J. E.; Kattus, A. A.; Newman, E. V., and Winkenwerder, W. L.: Preliminary observations on the effect of adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) in allergic diseases, *Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp.* 85:396, 1949.
44. Bordley, J. E.; Harvey, A. M. G.; Howard, J. E., and Newman, E. V.: Preliminary report on the use of ACTH in the hypersensitive state, in Mote, J. R. (ed.): *Proceedings of the First Clinical ACTH Conference* (Philadelphia: The Blakiston Company, 1950), p. 469.
45. Borman, M. C.: Danger with Benadryl of self medication and large dosage, *J. A. M. A.* 133:394, 1947.
46. Bourque, J. E., and Loew, E. R.: The effect of histamine antagonists on gastric secretion, *Am. J. Physiol.* 138:341, 1943.
47. Bourquin, J. B.: D'un novel antihistaminique de synthèse (Antistine) et de ses applications en ophthalmologie, *Schweiz. med. Wchnschr.* 76:296, 1946.
48. Bovet, D.; Horclois, R., and Fournel, J.: L'antagonisme exercé par la N-p-méthoxybenzyl-N-diméthylaminoethyl- $\alpha$ -aminopyridine sur l'hypotension et la vasodilatation histaminiques, *Compt. rend. Soc. de biol.* 138:165, 1944.
49. Bovet, D.; Horclois, R., and Walthert, F.: Propriétés antihistaminiques de la N-p-méthoxybenzyl-N-diméthylaminoéthyl  $\alpha$  amino-pyridine, *Compt. rend. Soc. de biol.* 138:99, 1944.
50. Bovet, D., and Maderni, P.: Action sympatholytic de

- quelques amines a fonction éther-oxyde phénolique, *Compt. rend. Soc. de biol.* 114:980, 1933.
51. Bovet, D., and Staub, A. M.: Action protectrice des éthers phénoliques au cours de l'intoxication histaminique, *Compt. rend. Soc. de biol.* 124:547, 1937.
  52. Bovet, D., and Walthert, F.: Structure chimique et activité pharmacodynamique des antihistaminiques de synthèse, *Ann. pharm. franç.* 2 (pt. 4): 1, 1944.
  53. Boyd, L. G.; Weissberg, J., and McGavack, T. H.: Tolerance studies of the antihistamine drug Thephorin, *New York State J. Med.* 48:1596, 1948.
  54. v. Braun, J.; Heider, K., and Müller, E.: Bromalkylierte aromatische Amine (I. Mitteilung), *Ber. deutsch. chem. Ges.* 50:1637, 1917.
  55. Brem, J., and Zonis, J.: Intranasal application of buffered tripelennamine (Pyribenzamine) solution in allergic rhinitis: A preliminary report, *J. Allergy* 20:70, 1949.
  56. Brewster, J. M.: Benadryl as a therapeutic agent in the treatment of the common cold, *U. S. Nav. M. Bull.* 47:810, 1947.
  57. Brewster, J. M.: Antihistaminic drugs in the therapy of the common cold, *U. S. Nav. M. Bull.* 49:1, 1949.
  58. Brewster, J. M.: Antihistaminic drugs in the therapy of the common cold, *Indust. Med.* 18:217, 1949.
  59. Brewster, J. M.: Treatment of common colds with an antihistaminic drug, *Illinois M. J.* 96:302, 1949.
  60. Brewster, J. M., and Dick, L. A.: The antibacterial activity of some of the common antihistamine drugs, *Texas Rep. Biol. & Med.* 7:69, 1949.
  61. Brown, B. B., and Werner, H. W.: The effects of Decapryn succinate, a new antihistamine agent, in some natural and acquired hypersensitivities in animals—2-[ $\alpha$ -(2-dimethylaminoethoxy)- $\alpha$ -methylbenzyl]-pyridine succinate, *Ann. Allergy* 6:122, 1948.
  62. Brown, B. B., and Werner, H. W.: The pharmacologic properties of 2-[ $\alpha$ -(2-dimethylaminoethoxy)- $\alpha$ -methylbenzyl]-pyridine succinate: A new antihistaminic agent, *J. Lab. & Clin. Med.* 33:325, 1948.
  63. Brown, E. A.: A clinical evaluation of a new antihistamine agent "Trimeton," *Ann. Allergy* 6:393, 1948.
  64. Brown, E. A.; Fox, L. A.; Maher, J. P.; Nobili, C.; Norton,



- R. C., and Sannella, T.: A clinical evaluation of chlorcyclizine (Perazil), *Ann. Allergy* 8:32, 1950.
65. Brown, E. A.; Weiss, L. R., and Maher, J. P.: The clinical evaluation of a new histamine antagonist "Decapryn," *Ann. Allergy* 6:1, 1948.
66. Brown, E. B., and Brown, F. W.: The use of a new antihistaminic combination in the treatment of allergic disorders, *New York State J. Med.* 48:1465, 1948.
67. Budnitz, J.: The use of Benadryl in Parkinson's disease, *New England J. Med.* 238:874, 1948.
68. Bukantz, S. C., and Dammin, G. J.: Fluorescein as an indicator of antihistaminic activity: Inhibition of histamine-induced fluorescence in the skin of human subjects, *Science* 107:224, 1948.
69. Burchell, H. B., and Varco, R. L.: The antihistamine activity of thymoxyethyldiethylamine and N'-ethyl-N'-diethylamino-ethylaniline as judged by the gastric response to histamine, *J. Pharmacol. & Exper. Therap.* 75:1, 1942.
70. Bussell, L.: Symptomatic treatment of myotonia atrophica, *Brit. M. J.* 2:1206, 1949.
71. Cahan, A. M.; Meilman, E., and Jacobson, B. M.: Agranulocytosis following Pyribenzamine, *New England J. Med.* 241:865, 1949.
72. Campaigne, E., and LeSuer, W. M.: 3-substituted thiophenes: III. Antihistamines of the N-(3-thenyl)-ethylenediamine series, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 71:333, 1949.
73. Campbell, B.: Inhibition of anaphylactic shock by acetylsalicylic acid, *Science* 108:478, 1948.
74. Campbell, B.; Baronofsky, I. D., and Good, R. A.: Effects of Benadryl on anaphylactic and histaminic shock in rabbits and guinea pigs, *Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med.* 64:281, 1947.
75. Canterbury, E. A., and Feinberg, S. M.: Unpublished observations.
76. Carliner, P. E.; Radman, H. M., and Gay, L. N.: Treatment of nausea and vomiting of pregnancy with Dramamine: Preliminary report, *Science* 110:215, 1949.
77. Carlson, R. G., and Whitehead, R.: The effect of sodium, potassium and thiosulfate ions on anaphylaxis, *J. Allergy* 14:462, 1943.
78. Carryer, H. M., and Koelsche, G.: Use of antihistaminic

- drugs in treating patients allergic to liver extract, *J. Allergy* 19:376, 1948.
79. Castillo, J. C.; de Beer, E. J., and Jaros, S. H.: A pharmacological study of N-methyl-N'-(4-chlorobenzhydryl) piperazine hydrochloride: A new antihistaminic, *J. Pharmacol. & Exper. Therap.* 96:388, 1949.
  80. Celice, J.; Perrault, M., and Durel, P.: Utilisation clinique des antihistaminiques de synthèse, *Bull. et mém. Soc. méd. d. hôp. de Paris* 58:284, 1942.
  81. Chen, G., and Clarke, I. G.: The influence of diphenhydramine hydrochloride and epinephrine on glucose metabolism in the rabbit, *J. Pharmacol. & Exper. Therap.* 93:175, 1948.
  82. Chen, G., and Ensor, C. R.: The influence of diphenhydramine hydrochloride (Benadryl) on apomorphine-induced emesis in dogs, *J. Pharmacol. & Exper. Therap.* 98:245, 1950.
  83. Chen, G.; Ensor, C. R., and Clarke, I. G.: The biological assay of histamine and diphenhydramine hydrochloride (Benadryl hydrochloride), *J. Pharmacol. & Exper. Therap.* 92:90, 1948.
  84. Chinn, H. I., and Oberst, F. W.: Effectiveness of various drugs in prevention of airsickness, *Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med.* 73:218, 1950.
  85. Churchill, J. A., and Gammon, G. D.: The effect of antihistaminic drugs on convulsive seizures, *J. A. M. A.* 141:18, 1949.
  86. Clapp, R. C.; Clark, J. H.; Vaughan, J. R.; English, J. P., and Anderson, G. W.: Halogenated thiophene derivatives as antihistamine agents, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 69:1549, 1947.
  87. Clark, W. G., and Mackay, E. M.: Effect of flavonoid (vitamin P-like) substances on histamine toxicity, anaphylactic shock, histamine-enhanced capillary permeability to dye, and bleeding time: With data on the toxicity of flavonoids, *J. Allergy* 21:133, 1950.
  88. Clement, R., and Godlewski, S.: Agranulocytose aigue curable apparue au cours du traitement d'un asthme par un antihistaminique de synthèse, *Bull. et mém. Soc. méd. d. hôp. de Paris* 61:103, 1945.
  89. Code, C. F.: The quantitative estimation of histamine in the blood, *J. Physiol.* 89:257, 1937.



90. Code, C. F.: The source in blood of the histamine-like constituent, *J. Physiol.* 90:349, 1937.
91. Code, C. F.: The mechanism of anaphylactic and allergic reactions: An evaluation of the role of histamine in their production, *Ann. Allergy* 2:457, 1944.
92. Code, C. F., and Hester, H. R.: The blood histamine during anaphylactic shock in the horse and calf, *Am. J. Physiol.* 127:71, 1939.
93. Coffin, G. S., and Kabat, E. A.: The effects of immunization with histamine azoprotein on histamine-intoxication and passive anaphylaxis in the guinea pig, *J. Immunol.* 52:201, 1946.
94. Coffin, M.: Intoxication mortelle par ingestion massive accidentelle d'Antergan, *Arch. Franç. pédiat.* 4:374, 1947.
95. Cohen, E. B.; Davis, H. P., and Mowry, W. A.: Thephorin in allergy: Study of 292 cases, *Am. J. Med.* 5:44, 1948.
96. Cohen, M. B., and Friedman, H. J.: Histamine azoprotein in the treatment of allergy, *J. Allergy* 18:7, 1947.
97. Combes, F. C.; Zuckerman, R., and Canizares, O.: Diatrin hydrochloride: Clinical and toxicological studies of a new antihistaminic agent, *J. Invest. Dermat.* 13:139, 1949.
98. Committee on Therapy of the American Academy of Allergy: Report, *J. Allergy* 20:310, 1949.
99. Committee on Therapy of the American Academy of Allergy: Report, *J. Allergy* 21:255, 1950.
100. Cortés, J. L., and Rodriguez Herrera, E.: Efectos de las ionizaciones de Benadryl en kjidos con manifestaciones alergicas, *Alergia* 2:1, 1948.
101. Council on Pharmacy and Chemistry, American Medical Association: Too many drugs, *J. A. M. A.* 139:378, 1949.
102. Council on Pharmacy and Chemistry, American Medical Association: Report of the Council: Status report on anti-histaminic agents in the prophylaxis and treatment of the common "cold," *J. A. M. A.* 142:566, 1950.
103. Court Brown, W. M., and Hunter, R. B.: Antihistamine drugs and radiation sickness, *Brit. M. J.* 2:984, 1948.
- 103a. Cowan, D. W., and Diehl, H. S.: Antihistaminic agents and ascorbic acid in the early treatment of the common cold, *J. A. M. A.* 143:421, 1950.
104. Craig, J.; Clark, N. S., and Chalmers, J. D.: Antihistaminic drug treatment of acute nephritis, *Brit. M. J.* 1:6, 1949.

105. Crane, J. T.; Lindsay, S., and Dailey, M. E.: An attempt to prevent histamine-induced ulcers in guinea pigs with Benadryl, *Am. J. Digest. Dis.* 14:56, 1947.
106. Craver, B. N.; Cameron, A., and Smith, J.: Kymographic registration of cerebrospinal fluid pressure (in dogs and cats): Effects of antihistamines and common drugs thereon, *Arch. internat. de pharmacodyn. et de therap.* 80: 310, 1949.
107. Crepea, S. B.; Allanson, J. C., and DeLambre, L.: The failure of antihistaminic drugs to inhibit Diodrast reactions, *New York State J. Med.* 49:2556, 1949.
108. Criepe, L. H., and Aaron, T. H.: Neohetramine: An experimental and clinical evaluation in allergic states, *J. Allergy* 19:215, 1948.
109. Criepe, L. H., and Aaron, T. H.: Thephorin: An experimental and clinical evaluation in allergic states, *J. Allergy* 19:304, 1948.
110. Criepe, L. H.; Levine, M. I., and Aaron, T. H.: Inhibition of the tuberculin type reaction by antihistaminic drugs and rutin, *Am. Rev. Tuberc.* 59:701, 1949.
- 110a. Crumbley, J. J., Jr.: Anemia following use of antihistaminic drugs, *J. A. M. A.* 143:726, 1950.
111. Curry, J. J.: The action of histamine on the respiratory tract in normal and asthmatic subjects, *J. Clin. Investigation* 25: 785, 1946.
112. Curry, J. J.: The effect of antihistamine substances and other drugs on histamine bronchoconstriction in asthmatic subjects, *J. Clin. Investigation* 25:792, 1946.
113. Curry, J. J.: Clinical use of histamine and histaminase: An evaluation, *M. Clin. North America* 31:1261, 1947.
114. Curtis, A. C., and Owens, B. B.: Beta-dimethylaminoethyl benzhydryl ether hydrochloride (Benadryl) in treatment of acute and chronic urticaria, *Univ. Hosp. Bull., Ann Arbor* 11:25, 1945.
115. Curtis, A. C., and Owens, B. B.: Beta-dimethylaminoethyl benzhydryl ether hydrochloride (Benadryl) in treatment of urticaria, *Arch. Dermat. & Syph.* 52:239, 1945.
116. Daily, R. K., and Daily, L., Jr.: Use of Privine-Antistine drops in ophthalmology, *Am. J. Ophth.* 32:441, 1949.
117. Dale, H. H.: Croonian lectures on some chemical factors in the control of the circulation, *Lancet* 1:1179, 1233, 1285, 1929.



118. Dale, H. H., and Laidlaw, P. P.: The physiological action of  $\beta$ -iminazolyethylamine, *J. Physiol.* 41:318, 1911.
119. Dammin, G. J., and Bukantz, S. C.: Modification of biologic response in experimental hypersensitivity, *J. A. M. A.* 139: 358, 1949.
- 119a. Dannenberg, T. B., and Feinberg, S. M.: Unpublished observations.
120. Darsie, M. L., Jr.; Perry, S. M.; Rosenfeld, D., and Zaro, J. A.: Size of histamine wheal in relation to dose and to animal species, *Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med.* 59:278, 1945.
121. D'Avanzo, C. S.: Thephorin ointment in pruritic dermatoses, *New England J. Med.* 241:741, 1949.
122. Davis, J. H., and Hunt, H. H.: Accidental Benadryl poisoning: Report of a fatal case, *J. Pediat.* 34:358, 1949.
123. Decourt, J.: Le médication antihistaminique, *Semaine d. hôp. Paris* 21:707, 1945.
124. Decourt, J.; Rinieri, A., and Sonnet, P.: Antihistaminiques de synthèse et sécrétion histaminique de l'estomac, *Compt. rend. Soc. de biol.* 139:470, 1945.
125. Decourt, P.: Action de bases antagonistes de l'histamine sur quelques maladies liées à des réactions d'hypersensibilité, *Bull. et mém. Soc. méd. d. hôp. de Paris* 58:265, 1942.
126. Deichman, W. B.: Notes from the pharmacy committee, Division of Pharmacology, Albany Medical College, 1950.
127. Omitted.
128. Deutsch, E.: Ueber die Wirkung von Antihistaminsubstanzen auf den Magensaft des Menschen, *Klin. Med., Wien* 2:1113, 1947.
129. Dews, P. B., and Graham, J. D. P.: The antihistamine substance 2786RP, *Brit. J. Pharmacol.* 1:278, 1946.
130. Diehl, H. S.; Baker, A. B., and Cowan, D. W.: Cold vaccines: Evaluation based on controlled study, *J. A. M. A.* 111:1168, 1938.
131. Dill, W. A., and Glazko, A. J.: Biochemical studies on diphenhydramine (Benadryl): I. Chemical determination of diphenhydramine, *J. Biol. Chem.* 179:395, 1949.
132. Dougray, T.: Antihistamines in the treatment of nausea and vomiting of pregnancy, *Brit. M. J.* 2:1081, 1949.
133. Dragstedt, C. A.: The significance of histamine in anaphylaxis and allergy, *Quart. Bull., Northwestern Univ. M. School* 17:102, 1943.

134. Dragstedt, C. A.: The significance of histamine in anaphylaxis, *J. Allergy* 16:69, 1945.
135. Dragstedt, C. A.: Histamine in anaphylaxis and allergy, in *Feinberg, S. M. (175)*.
136. Dragstedt, C. A., and Gebauer-Fuelnegg, E.: Studies in anaphylaxis: I. The appearance of a physiologically active substance during anaphylactic shock, *Am. J. Physiol.* 102:512, 1932.
137. Dragstedt, C. A., and Mead, F. B.: The role of histamine in canine anaphylactic shock, *J. Pharmacol. & Exper. Therap.* 57:419, 1936.
138. Dragstedt, C. A.; Ramirez de Arellano, M., and Lawton, A. H.: The relationship of histamine to anaphylaxis in the rabbit, *Science* 91: 617, 1940.
139. Drake, T. G.: Agranulocytosis during therapy with the antihistaminic agent methaphenilene (Diatrin), *J. A. M. A.* 142:477, 1950.
140. Dreisbach, R. H.: Failure of Benadryl and Pyribenzamine in experimental skin sensitization to penicillin and horse serum, *J. Allergy* 18:397, 1947.
141. Dreyer, W. B., and King, J. W.: Anaphylaxis in the fish, *J. Immunol.* 60:277, 1948.
142. Duca, C. J., and Scudi, J. V.: Neohetramine in the treatment of experimental tuberculosis, *Ann. Allergy* 7:318, 1949.
143. Dundy, H. D.; Zohn, B. Z., and Chobot, R.: Histamine azoprotein: Clinical evaluation, *J. Allergy* 18:1, 1947.
144. Edholm, O. G.: The effect of histidine on histamine shock, *J. Physiol.* 101:252, 1942.
145. Editorial: Antihistamine drugs hazard to children, *New York Med.* 6:14, 1950.
146. Editorial: Risks of anti-histamine medication, *Lancet* 1:28, 1950.
147. Edlbacher, S.; Jucker, P., and Baur, H.: Die Beeinflussung der Darmreaktion des Histamins durch Aminosäuren, *Ztschr. f. physiol. Chem.* 247:63, 1937.
148. Einhorn, A., and Rotlauf, L.: Über das Verhalten gemischter Kohlensäureester beim Erhitzen, *Ann. Chem.* 382:237, 1911.
149. Eisenstadt, W. S.: A clinical evaluation of Chlor-Trimeton, *Journal Lancet* 70:26, 1950.
150. Elkinton, J. R.; Hunt, A. D., Jr.; Godfrey, L.; McCrory, W.; Rogerson, A., and Stokes, J., Jr.: Effects of ACTH in pa-



tients with collagen and allied diseases, in Mote, J. R. (ed.): *Proceedings of the First Clinical ACTH Conference* (Philadelphia: The Blakiston Company, 1950), p. 429.

151. Ellis, F. A., and Bundick, W. R.: Reactions to the local use of Thephorin, *J. Invest. Dermat.* 13:25, 1949.
152. Ellis, F. W.: The effects of some new spasmolytic agents in perfused guinea pig lungs, *Federation Proc.* 4:117, 1945.
153. Elster, S. K.; Freeman, M. E., and Lowry, E. L.: The action of tripelennamine on hyaluronidase in the albino rat, *J. Pharmacol. & Exper. Therap.* 96:332, 1949.
154. Emmelin, N., and Muren, A.: Effects of antihistamine compounds on the adrenaline liberation from the suprarenals, *Acta physiol. Scandinav.* 17:345, 1949.
155. Engelsher, D. L.: Antihistamine drugs in asthma and hay fever, *New York State J. Med.* 47:1686, 1947.
156. Epstein, E.: Dermatitis occurring during therapy with tripelennamine hydrochloride (Pyribenzamine hydrochloride), *J. A. M. A.* 134:782, 1947.
157. Epstein, E.: Dermatitis due to antihistaminic agents, *J. Invest. Dermat.* 12:151, 1949.
158. Ercoli, N.; Schachter, N.; Hueper, R. J., and Lewis, M. N.: The toxicologic and antihistaminic properties of N,N'-dimethyl-N'-phenyl-N'-(2-thienylmethyl) ethylenediamine hydrochloride (Diatrin), *J. Pharmacol. & Exper. Therap.* 93:210, 1948.
159. Ercoli, N.; Schachter, R. J.; Leonard, F., and Solmssen, U. V.: A new antihistaminic: N,N-dimethyl-N'-(2-pyridyl)-N'-(2-thienylmethyl)-ethylenediamine hydrochloride, *Arch. Biochem.* 13:487, 1947.
160. Essex, H. E., and Horton, B. T.: Observations on development of resistance to histamine in the guinea pig, *Proc. Staff Meet., Mayo Clin.* 16:603, 1941.
161. Essex, H. E.; Wegria, R. G.; Herrick, J. F., and Mann, F. C.: The effect of certain drugs on the coronary blood flow of the trained dog, *Am. Heart J.* 19:554, 1940.
162. Eyermann, C. H.: Clinical experiences with a new antihistaminic drug, *J. Allergy* 17:210, 1946.
163. Fabinyi, M., and Szebehelyi, J.: The mechanism of desensitization with histamine, *Acta allergol.* 2:233, 1949.
164. Fabricant, N. D.: Personal communication.
165. Farber, S.; Pope, A., and Landsteiner, E., Jr.: Role of acetyl-

- choline in the anaphylactic process, Arch. Path. 37:275, 1944.
166. Farmer, L.: Nonspecific "desensitization" through histamine, J. Immunol. 36:37, 1939.
  167. Farmer, L.: Experiments on histamine-refractoriness; II. Nonspecific "desensitization" through oral application of histamine, J. Immunol. 37:321, 1939.
  168. Farmer, L.: Experiments on histamine-refractoriness: III. The effect of histamine pretreatment on the establishment of active sensitization, J. Allergy 19:358, 1948.
  169. Farmer, L.: Experiments on histamine-refractoriness: IV. Histamine pretreatment in eggwhite-sensitized guinea pigs, J. Allergy 19:361, 1949.
  170. Farmer, L., and Kaufman, R. E.: Histamine in the treatment of nasal allergy (perennial and seasonal allergic rhinitis), Laryngoscope 52:3, 1942.
  171. Farmer, L., and Kaufman, R. E.: Histamine in the treatment of nasal allergy (perennial and seasonal allergic rhinitis), Laryngoscope 52:255, 1942.
  172. Farmer, L., and Rohdenburg, G. L.: Histamine induced cardiovascular lesions, J. Allergy 21:120, 1950.
  173. Omitted.
  174. Feinberg, S. M.: Report to the Council on Pharmacy and Chemistry: Histamine and antihistaminic agents; their experimental and therapeutic status, J. A. M. A. 132:702, 1946.
  175. Feinberg, S. M.: *Allergy in Practice* (ed. 2; Chicago: Year Book Publishers, Inc., 1946.)
  176. Feinberg, S. M.: Histamine antagonists: IX. N,N-dimethyl-N'-(2-pyridyl)-N'-(5-chloro-2-thenyl)-ethylenediamine hydrochloride (chlorothen); a new antihistaminic and anti-allergic agent, Quart. Bull., Northwestern Univ. M. School 22:27, 1948.
  177. Feinberg, S. M.: Letter to the editor, J. Allergy 21:80, 1950.
  178. Feinberg, S. M.: Histamine antagonists: XVII. Experimental and clinical experience with N,N-methyl-N'-(4-fluorobenzyl)-N'-(2-pyridyl)-ethylenediamine, J. Michigan M. Soc. 49:454, 1950.
  179. Feinberg, S. M.: Histamine antagonists: XVI. N-methyl-N'-(4-chlorobenzhydryl) piperazine hydrochloride (chlorcyclizine); a new antihistaminic compound with tendency to prolonged action, Illinois M. J. 97:324, 1950.



180. Feinberg, S. M.: Pyrrolazote: Unpublished observations.
181. Feinberg, S. M., and Bernstein, T. B.: Tripelennamine "Pyribenzamine" ointment for the relief of itching, *J. A. M. A.* 134:874, 1947.
182. Feinberg, S. M., and Bernstein, T. B.: Histamine antagonists: VIII. N-( $\alpha$ -pyridyl)-N-( $\alpha$ -thienyl)-N', N'-dimethylethylenediamine, a new antihistaminic compound; experimental and clinical experiences, *J. Lab. & Clin. Med.* 32:1370, 1947.
183. Feinberg, S. M., and Bernstein, T. B.: Histamine antagonists: X. A new antihistaminic drug, 2-[ $\alpha$ -(2-dimethylaminoethoxy)- $\alpha$ -methylbenzyl]-pyridine succinate (Decapryn succinate); experimental and clinical results, *J. Lab. & Clin. Med.* 33:319, 1948.
184. Feinberg, S. M., and Bernstein, T. B.: Nebulized Pyribenzamine in nasal and bronchial allergy, *J. Lab. & Clin. Med.* 34:1078, 1949.
185. Feinberg, S. M., and Friedlaender, S.: Relief of dermatographism and other urticarias of histamine origin by a synthetic benzhydryl alkamine ether, *J. Allergy* 16:296, 1945.
186. Feinberg, S. M., and Friedlaender, S.: Histamine antagonists: IV. Pyridyl-N'-benzyl-N'-dimethylethylenediamine (Pyribenzamine) in symptomatic treatment of allergic manifestations, *Am. J. M. Sc.* 213:58, 1947.
187. Feinberg, S. M.; Malkiel, S.; Bernstein, T. B., and Hargis, B. J.: Histamine antagonists: XV. Comparative experimental studies of certain antihistaminic compounds, *J. Pharmacol. & Exper. Therap.*, in press.
188. Feinberg, S. M.; Malkiel, S., and Dannenberg, T. B.: Unpublished observations.
189. Feinberg, S. M.; Norén, B., and Feinberg, R. H.: Histamine antagonists: XI. Aerosolized antihistamine drugs in prevention of histamine bronchospasm in guinea pigs, *J. Allergy* 19:90, 1948.
190. Feinstone, W. H.; Williams, R. D., and Rubin, B.: Anti-histamine and antianaphylactic effect of Hetramine, *Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med.* 63:158, 1946.
191. Fell, N.; Rodney, G., and Marshall, D. E.: Histamine-protein complexes; synthesis and immunologic investigation: I. Histamine-azoprotein, *J. Immunol.* 47:237, 1943.
192. Feller, A. E.; Badger, G. F.; Hodges, R. G.; Jordon, W. S.; Rammelkamp, C. H., and Dingle, J. H.: The failure of anti-

- histaminic drugs to prevent or cure the common cold and undifferentiated respiratory diseases, *New England J. Med.* 242:737, 1950.
193. Finch, J. W.: Nausea and vomiting induced by pregnancy or by administration of synthetic estrogens: Treatment with antihistaminic compounds, *Am. J. Obst. & Gynec.* 58:591, 1949.
  194. Fischel, E. E.: Effect of salicylate and tripeleennamine hydrochloride (Pyribenzamine) on the Arthus reaction and on bacterial allergic reactions, *Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med.* 66:537, 1947.
  195. Fourneau, E., and Bovet, D.: Recherches sur l'action sympathicolytique d'un nouveau dérivé du dioxane, *Arch. internat. de pharmacodyn. et de thérap.* 46:178, 1933.
  196. Fourneau, E., and Bovet, D.: Recherches sur l'action sympathicolytique de nouveaux dérivés du dioxane, *Compt. rend. Soc. de biol.* 113:388, 1933.
  - 196a. Fox, N., and Livingston, G.: Role of allergy in the epidemiology of the common cold, *Arch. Otolaryngol.* 49:575, 1949.
  197. Frank, D. E.: Use of crotalin in the prevention of anaphylactic shock in guinea pigs, *Ann. Allergy* 5:156, 1947.
  198. Frey, J., and Walterspiel, H.: Über Antistinkebandlung allergischer Erkrankungen, *Med. Klin.* 43:272, 1948.
  199. Friedberger, A.; Szymanowski, Z.; Kumagi, T.; Odeira, and Lura, A.: Die Spezifität der Antianaphylaxis und ihre Beziehungen zur Resistenz bei einigen der Anaphylaxis ähnlichen Vergiftungen, *Ztschr. f. Immunitätsforsch. u. exper. Therap.* 14:371, 1912.
  200. Friedemann, V.: Weitere Untersuchungen über den Mechanismus der Anaphylaxie, *Ztschr. f. Immunitätsforsch. u. exper. Therap.* 2:591, 1909.
  201. Friedlaender, A. S., and Friedlaender, S.: An evaluation of Antistine, a new antihistaminic substance, *Ann. Allergy* 6:23, 1948.
  202. Friedlaender, A. S., and Friedlaender, S.: Antihistaminic, antianaphylactic and antiallergic activity of N-( $\alpha$ -pyridyl)-N-( $\alpha$ -thienyl)-N', N'-dimethylethylenediamine hydrochloride, *Am. J. M. Sc.* 215:530, 1948.
  203. Friedlaender, A. S.; Friedlaender, S., and Vandenbelt, J. M.: Spectral absorption characteristics of antihistaminic drugs:



- Relationship to ultraviolet erythema, *J. Allergy* 20:229, 1949.
204. Friedlaender, S., and Feinberg, S. M.: Histamine antagonists: III. The effect of oral and local use of  $\beta$ -dimethylaminoethyl benzhydryl ether hydrochloride on the whealing due to histamine, antigen-antibody reactions, and other whealing mechanisms: Therapeutic results in allergic manifestations, *J. Allergy* 17:129, 1946.
205. Friedlaender, S.; Feinberg, S. M., and Feinberg, A. R.: Histamine antagonists: V. Comparison of Benadryl and Pyribenzamine in histamine and anaphylactic shock, *Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med.* 65:65, 1946.
206. Friedlaender, S.; Feinberg, S. M., and Feinberg, A. R.: Histamine antagonists: VI. Comparative antihistaminic activity of some ethylenediamine drugs in the guinea pig, *J. Lab. & Clin. Med.* 32:47, 1947.
207. Friedlaender, S., and Friedlaender, A. S.: Experimental and clinical studies of Neohetramine, a new antihistaminic agent, *J. Lab. & Clin. Med.* 33:865, 1948.
208. Friedlaender, S., and Friedlaender, A. S.: Parenteral Benadryl in allergy, *Am. J. Med.* 4:863, 1948.
209. Friedman, E., and Silverman, I.: The effect of antihistamine medication on the tuberculin reaction in children, *Am. Rev. Tuberc.* 60:354, 1949.
210. Friedman, L.: The use of aerosol "Benadryl" in bronchial asthma, *South. M. J.* 42:491, 1949.
211. Friesen, S. R.; Baronofsky, I. D., and Wagensteen, O. H.: Benadryl fails to protect against histamine provoked ulcer, *Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med.* 63:23, 1946.
212. Fuchs, A. M.; Schulman, P. M., and Strauss, M. B.: Clinical studies with Pyribenzamine (N'-pyridyl-N'benzyl-N-dimethylethylenediamine) in hay fever, *J. Allergy* 18:385, 1947.
213. Gair, D. S., and Ducey, J.: Chemical structure of substances effective in treatment of parkinsonism, *Arch. Int. Med.* 85:284, 1950.
214. Gastineau, C. F., and Leavitt, M. D.: Treatment of allergy to insulin: Report of one case, *Proc. Staff Meet., Mayo Clin.* 21:316, 1946.
215. Gaté, J.; Thiers, H.; Cuilleret, P., and Pellerat, J.: Recherches

- sur l'action de nouveaux composés antihistaminiques de synthèse, *J. de méd. de Lyon* 23:401, 1942.
216. Gates, E. A.: Benadryl in parkinsonism, *Lancet* 1:670, 1949.
217. Gay, L. N., and Carliner, P. E.: The prevention and treatment of motion sickness: I. Seasickness, *Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp.* 84:470, 1949.
218. Gay, L. N., and Carliner, P. E.: The prevention and treatment of motion sickness: I. Seasickness, *Science* 109:359, 1949.
219. Gay, L. N.; Landau, S. W.; Carliner, P. E.; Davidson, N. S.; Furstenberg, F. F.; Herman, N. B.; Nelson, W. H.; Parsons, J. W., and Winkenwerder, W. W.: Comparative study of antihistamine substances: III. Clinical observations, *Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp.* 83:330, 1948.
220. Gebauer-Fuelnegg, E., and Dragstedt, C. A.: Studies in anaphylaxis: II. The nature of a physiologically active substance appearing during anaphylactic shock, *Am. J. Physiol.* 102:520, 1932.
221. Geiger, J.; Rosenfield, S. Z., and Hartman, D. L.: Unusual reaction following Benadryl administration, *J. A. M. A.* 133:392, 1947.
222. Gelfand, H. H.: Hypertension following Benadryl, *J. A. M. A.* 134:1278, 1947.
223. Gelfand, H. H.: The role of Thephorin in allergic disorders, *New York State J. Med.* 48:1947, 1948.
224. Gelvin, E. P.; Elias, H., and McGavack, T. H.: The effect of dimethylaminoethyl benzhydryl ether hydrochloride (Benadryl) upon permeability of meningeal capillaries, *J. Pharmacol. & Exper. Therap.* 89:101, 1947.
225. Gelvin, E. P., and McGavack, T. H.: Appearance of dimethylaminoethyl benzhydryl ether hydrochloride (Benadryl) in the spinal fluid after oral administration to human beings, *Bull. New York M. Coll., Flower & Fifth Ave. Hosps.* 9:51, 1946.
226. Gilman, H., and Shirley, D. A.: Some derivatives of phenothiazine, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 66:888, 1944.
227. Giunchi, G., and Serafini, U.: L'equivalente istaminico del sangue in varie condizioni fisiopatologiche: II. L'equivalente istaminico del sangue nella pollinosi, *Policlinico* 51:81, 1944.
228. Glazko, A. J., and Dill, W. A.: Biochemical studies on di-



- phenhydramine (Benadryl): II. Distribution in tissues and urinary excretion, *J. Biol. Chem.* 179:403, 1949.
229. Glazko, A. J., and Dill, W. A.: Biochemical studies on diphenhydramine (Benadryl): IV. Degradation of Benadryl by tissue enzymes, *J. Biol. Chem.* 179:417, 1949.
230. Glazko, A. J.; McGinty, D. A.; Dill, W. A., and Ward, C. S.: Biochemical studies on diphenhydramine (Benadryl): III. Application of radioactive carbon to metabolic studies of Benadryl, *J. Biol. Chem.* 179:409, 1949.
231. Goldberg, L. C.: The treatment of dermatoses with Benadryl ( $\beta$ -dimethylaminoethyl benzhydryl ether hydrochloride): An analysis of its effects upon 170 patients with various dermatoses, *J. Invest. Dermat.* 7:301, 1946.
232. Goldman, H. I.: Clinical evaluation of Trimeton, *J. Maine M. A.* 40: 111, 1949.
233. Goldman, R.; Adams, W. S.; Beck, W. S.; Levin, M.; Bassett, S. H., and White, A.: The effect of ACTH on one case of periarteritis nodosa, in Mote, J. R. (ed.): *Proceedings of the First Clinical ACTH Conference* (Philadelphia: The Blakiston Company, 1950), p. 437.
234. Gordon, J. S.: Antihistaminic drugs in the treatment of upper respiratory tract infection, *Laryngoscope* 58:1265, 1948.
235. Grant, W. M., and Loeb, D. R.: Effect of locally applied antihistamine drugs on normal eyes, *Arch. Ophth.* 39:553, 1948.
236. Graub, M., and Barrist, E. M.: The effect of antihistaminic drugs upon the tuberculin reaction, *Am. Rev. Tuberc.* 61: 735, 1950.
237. Gunnar, R. M., and Weeks, R. E.: Effect of tripelennamine hydrochloride on burn shock, *Arch. Path.* 47:594, 1948.
238. Guy, W. B.: The effect of Pyribenzamine on the tuberculin reaction in man, *J. Invest. Dermat.* 8:335, 1947.
239. Haley, T. J.: Microtoxicology: II. Identification and differentiation of Benadryl and Pyribenzamine hydrochloride, *J. Am. Pharm. A.* 37:294, 1948.
240. Haley, T. J., and Harris, D. H.: The effect of topically applied antihistaminic drugs on the mammalian capillary bed, *J. Pharmacol. & Exper. Therap.* 95:293, 1949.
241. Haley, T. J., and Harris, D. H.: The effect of several antihistaminic drugs on mortality due to x-irradiation, *Stanford M. Bull.* 8:1, 1950.

242. Haley, T. J., and Keenan, G. L.: Microtoxicology: IV. The identification of antihistaminic agents of the thenyl series, *J. Am. Pharm. A.* 38:85, 1949.
243. Haley, T. J., and Keenan, G. L.: Microtoxicology: V. Colorimetric reactions and optical crystallographic properties of several antihistamines of unrelated structure, *J. Am. Pharm. A.* 38:381, 1949.
244. Haley, T. J., and Keenan, G. L.: Microtoxicology: VI. Identification and differentiation of the newer antihistamine drugs related to Benadryl, Pyribenzamine and Antergan, *J. Am. Pharm. A.* 38:384, 1944.
245. Haley, T. J., and Keenan, G. L.: Microtoxicology: VII. Identification and differentiation of the antihistaminics of the thiodiphenylamine series, *J. A. Pharm. A.* 39:212, 1950.
246. Hallenbeck, G. A.: Studies on the effect of thymoxyethyldiethylamine (929F) and N-diethylaminoethyl-N-ethylaniline on gastric secretion in the dog, *Am. J. Physiol.* 139:329, 1943.
247. Halpern, B. N.: Les antihistaminiques de synthèse: Essais de chimiothérapie des états allergiques, *Arch. internat. de pharmacodyn. et de therap.* 68:339, 1942.
248. Halpern, B. N.: Certains amino-acides exercent-ils réellement une action antagoniste spécifique vis-a-vis de l'histamine? *Compt. rend. Soc. de biol.* 139:625, 1945.
249. Halpern, B. N.: Action antianaphylactique des dérivés de la thiodiphenylamine. Relations avec l'éosinophilie tissulaire, *Compt. rend. Soc. de biol.* 140:363, 1946.
250. Halpern, B. N.: Experimental research on a new series of chemical substances with powerful antihistaminic activity: The thiodiphenylamine derivatives, *J. Allergy* 18:263, 1947.
251. Halpern, B. N.: Personal communication.
252. Halpern, B. N., and Cruchaud, S.: Prévention de l'oedème aigu du poumon expérimental par les antihistaminiques de synthèse, *Compt. rend. Soc. de biol.* 141:1038, 1947.
253. Halpern, B. N., and Ducrot, R.: Recherches expérimentales sur une nouvelle série chimique de corps doués de propriétés antihistaminiques puissantes: Les dérivés de la thiodiphénylamine (T.D.A.), *Compt. rend. Soc. de biol.* 140:361, 1946.
254. Halpern, B. N., and Hamburger, J.: New synthetic anti-



- histamine substance derived from phenothiazine (Phenergan, 3277RP), *Canad. M. A. J.* 59:322, 1948.
255. Halpern, B. N.; Hamburger, J., and Cruchaud, S.: Action préventive d'un antihistaminique dérivé de la thiodiphénylamine sur l'oedème aigu du poumon expérimental, *Acta allergol.* 1:97, 1948.
256. Halpern, B.; Hamburger, J., and Cruchaud, S.: Action préventive d'un antihistaminique dérivé de la thiodiphénylamine sur l'oedème aigu du poumon expérimental, *Semaine d. hôp. Paris* 24:656, 1948.
257. Halpern, B.; Hamburger, J., and Debray, C.: Note préliminaire sur une nouvelle série chimique de corps doués d'une activité antihistaminique et antiallergique puissante: Les dérivés de la thiodiphénylamine, *Bull. et mém. Soc. méd. d. hôp. de Paris* 62:607, 1946.
258. Halpern, B. N., and Laubscher, J. P.: Recherches sur l'action des antihistaminiques de synthèse sur la résistance capillaire chez l'homme, *Semaine d. hôp. Paris* 21:667, 1948.
259. Halpern, B. N.; Perrin, G., and Dews, P.: Pouvoir anesthésique local de quelques antihistaminiques de synthèse: Relations entre l'action anesthésique et l'action antihistaminique, *Compt. rend. Soc. de biol.* 141:1125, 1947.
260. Halpern, B. N.; Perrin, G., and Dews, P. B.: Pouvoir anesthésique local de quelques antihistaminiques de synthèse: Relation entre l'action anesthésique et l'action antihistaminique, *Semaine d. hôp. Paris* 24:2561, 1948.
261. Halpern, B. N., and Walthert, F.: Conditionnement de l'antagonisme histamine-antihistaminiques sur la corne utérine de coboye par l'équilibre ionique du milieu de survie, *Compt. rend. Soc. de biol.* 139:402, 1945.
262. Hamburger, J.; Halpern, B. N., and Neel, J.: Action préventive de l'antihistaminique de synthèse N-diméthylamino-2-propyl-1-thiodiphénylamine (3277RP) sur l'albuminurie orthostatique expérimentale, *Compt. rend. Soc. de biol.* 142:183, 1948.
263. Hare, R.: An experimental investigation into the vascular reactions of the susceptible skin to protein, *Heart* 13:227, 1926.
264. Harris, M. C., and Shure, N.: Eczematoid dermatitis following ingestion of "Pyribenzamine hydrochloride" N.N.R. tablets, *J. Allergy* 18:408, 1947.

265. Harris, R.; McGavack, T. H., and Elias, H.: The nature of the action of dimethylaminoethyl benzhydryl ether hydrochloride (Benadryl): Effects upon the human eye, *J. Lab. & Clin. Med.* 31:1148, 1946.
266. Hebald, S.; Cooke, R. A., and Downing, L. M.: Clinical and serologic study of ragweed hay fever patients treated with histamine azoprotein (Hapamine), *J. Allergy* 18:13, 1947.
267. Herrmann, H.: Effect of antihistamines on loss of adhesiveness of corneal epithelium after injection of histamine, *Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med.* 69:506, 1948.
- 267a. Hilker, A. W.: Agranulocytosis from tripelennamine (Pyribenzamine) hydrochloride, *J. A. M. A.* 143:741, 1950.
268. Hill, H., and Martin, L.: A review of experimental studies of nonspecific inhibition of anaphylactic shock, *Medicine* 11:141, 1932.
269. Hiramatsu, N.: Studies on vitamin P (hesperidin): IV. Influence of hesperidin upon serum anaphylaxis, *Jap. J. Dermat. & Urol.* 49:304, 1941 (abst., *Far Eastern Science Bull.* 1:37, 1941).
270. Hjort, A. M.; Worden, A. S., and Hogle, J.: Evaluation of histamine and cholinesterase in allergic phenomena, *Ann. Int. Med.* 32:217, 1950.
271. Hoagland, R. J.; Dietz, E. N.; Myers, P. W., and Cosand, H. C.: Antihistaminic drugs for colds: Evaluation based on a controlled study, *J. A. M. A.* 143:157, 1950.
272. Hoffman, D. B.: Effect of treatment with antihistaminic drug on blood pressure and urine in pregnant women, *Am. J. Obst. & Gynec.* 58:385, 1949.
273. Holtkamp, D. E.; Hagerman, D. D., and Whitehead, R. W.: Side effects of three antihistaminic drugs, *J. Allergy* 19:384, 1948.
274. Hoppe, J. O., and Lands, A. M.: The toxicological properties of N,N-dimethyl-N'-(3-thenyl)-N'-(2-pyridyl) ethylenediamine hydrochloride (Thenfadil): A new antihistaminic drug, *J. Pharmacol. & Exper. Therap.* 97:371, 1949.
275. Horton, B. T.: Use of histamine in the treatment of specific types of headaches, *J. A. M. A.* 116:377, 1941.
276. Horton, C. E., and Brennan, A. J.: Use of antihistamine drugs in the treatment for trigeminal neuralgia, *J. A. M. A.* 136:870, 1948.
277. Hubbard, T. F., and Goldbaum, L. R.: Effects of Pyribenza-



mine on the respiration of mouse brain homogenates, *J. Lab. & Clin. Med.* 35:284, 1950.

278. Hüllstrung, H., and Hach, K.: Experimentelle Sensibilisierung und deren Beeinflussung durch Vitamine beim Meerschweinchen: I, *Ztschr. f. Immunitätsforsch. u. exper. Therap.* 100:393, 1941.
279. Hunter, R. B.: Neoantergan in the treatment of urticaria, *Lancet* 1:672, 1947.
280. Hunter, R. B., and Dunlop, D. M.: Antihistamine drug for pruritus of jaundice, *Brit. M. J.* 2:547, 1947.
281. Hunter, R. B., and Dunlop, D. M.: A review of antihistamine drugs, *Quart. J. Med.* 17:271, 1948.
282. Hurwitz, P.: Antistine in ocular allergy, *Am. J. Ophth.* 31:1409, 1948.
283. Hutterer, C. P.: Chemistry of antihistamine substances, *Enzymologia* 12:277, 1948.
284. Hutterer, C. P.; Djerassi, C.; Beears, W. L.; Mayer, R. L., and Scholz, C. R.: Heterocyclic amines with antihistaminic activity, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 68:1999, 1946.
285. Ingraham, R. C., and Wiggers, H. C.: Treatment of impending hemorrhagic shock with an antihistamine agent, *Federation Proc.* 5:50, 1947.
286. Jacques, L. B., and Waters, E. T.: The isolation of crystalline heparin from the blood of dogs in anaphylactic shock, *Am. J. Physiol.* 129:398, 1940.
287. Janowitz, H., and Grossman, M. I.: Minimal effective dose of intravenously administered histamine in pregnant and non-pregnant human beings, *Am. J. Physiol.* 157:94, 1949.
288. Jaros, S. H.: The clinical application of a new piperazine compound: II. Clinical observations, *Ann. Allergy* 7:466, 1949.
289. Jaros, S. H.; Castillo, J. C., and de Beor, E. J.: The clinical application of a new piperazine compound: I. Human pharmacology, *Ann. Allergy* 7:458, 1949.
290. Jones, H. M., and Brady, E. S.: The colorimetric estimation of N(2-pyridyl) substituted antihistamine drugs, *J. Am. Pharm. A.* 38:579, 1949.
291. Judd, A. R., and Henderson, A. R.: The use of antihistaminic drugs in human tuberculosis, *Ann. Allergy* 7:306, 1949.

292. Kallós, P.: Ueber die Histidinbehandlung allergischer Krankheiten, *Gastroenterologia* 71:233, 1946.
293. Kallós, P.: Om "histaminantagonisternas" betydelse vid behandling av allergiska sjukdomar, *Nord. med.* 34:1015, 1947.
294. Kallós, P., and Deffner-Kallós, L.: En ny Kvantitativ metod für bedömning av Nudreaktioner, prövad vid undersökning av antastenets antihistamineffekt, *Nord. med.* 35:1878, 1947.
295. Kallós, P., and Pagel, W.: Experimentelle Untersuchungen über Asthma bronchiale, *Acta med. Scandinav.* 91:292, 1937.
296. Kapeller-Adler, R.: Histamine metabolism in pregnancy, *Lancet* 2:745, 1949.
297. Karady, E. S.: Histamine tolerance and anaphylactic death in sensitized guinea pigs, *J. Immunol.* 41:1, 1941.
298. Karady, S., and Browne, J. S. L.: Effect of histaminase treatment of histamine and anaphylactic shock in guinea pigs, *J. Immunol.* 37:463, 1939.
299. Katz, G.: Histamine release from blood cells in anaphylaxis in vitro, *Science* 91:221, 1940.
300. Katz, G.: Histamine release in the allergic skin reaction, *Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med.* 49:272, 1942.
301. Katz, G., and Cohen, S.: Experimental evidence for the histamine release in allergy, *J. A. M. A.* 117:1782, 1941.
302. Katzenstein, R.: Histamine tolerance, *Yale J. Biol. & Med.* 16:325, 1944.
303. Keenan, G. L.: Microscopic description of the antihistamine substances Benadryl and Pyribenzamine, *J. Am. Pharm. A.* 36:281, 1947.
304. Kellner, A.; Correll, J. W.; Ladd, A. T., and Alvord, E. C.: Prolonged protection of guinea pigs against histamine by means of pellets of Pyribenzamine in beeswax implanted subcutaneously, *J. Immunol.* 60:339, 1948.
305. Kells, P.: Pyribenzamine as an adjunct in the control of morphine withdrawal syndrome, *South. M. J.* 41:134, 1948.
306. Kendig, E. L.; Spencer, W. P., and La Fratta, C. W.: The effect of antihistaminic drugs on the tuberculin patch test, *J. Pediat.* 35:750, 1949.
307. Kessler, M. M.: Hydryllin for the common cold, *J. M. Soc. New Jersey* 47:29, 1950.
308. Kesten, B. M.: Treatment of allergic and other dermatoses



- with Pyribenzamine hydrochloride, *Ann. Allergy* 6:408, 1948.
309. Kesten, B. M., and Sheard, C., Jr.: Treatment of allergic and some other dermatoses with Thephorin, *J. Invest. Dermat.* 9:65, 1947.
310. Kline, P. R., and Baer, R. L.: Nature of inhibition of ultra-violet erythema by Pyribenzamine: Preliminary report, *J. Invest. Dermat.* 10:397, 1948.
311. Koelsche, G. A.; Prickman, L. E., and Carryer, H. M.: The symptomatic treatment of bronchial asthma and hay fever with Benadryl, *Proc. Staff Meet., Mayo Clin.* 20:432, 1945.
312. Kreis, B.: Action d'un anti-histaminique de synthèse sur l'allergie tuberculeuse du cobaye, *Ann. Inst. Pasteur* 72:308, 1946.
313. Krueger, A. A.: Histamine in treatment of allergic diseases: A report of 126 cases, *Northwest Med.* 47:27, 1948.
314. Kyrides, L. P.; Meyer, F. C., and Zienty, F. B.: Thiophene-containing antihistaminic agents, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 69: 2239, 1947.
315. Kyser, F. A.: Recent studies on experimental myocarditis, *Quart. Bull., Northwestern Univ. M. School* 22:256, 1948.
316. Kyser, F. A.; McCarter, J. C., and Stengle, J.: Effect of anti-histamine drugs (including Benadryl) upon serum-induced myocarditis in rabbits, *J. Lab. & Clin. Med.* 32:379, 1947.
317. Labelle, A., and Tislow, P.: Pharmacological properties of Trimeton, a new antihistaminic compound, *Federation Proc.* 7:236, 1948.
318. Landau, S. W., and Gay, L. N.: Influence of certain amino acids on histamine reactions and anaphylactic reactions in intestinal strips of guinea pigs and in intact guinea pigs, *Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp.* 74:55, 1944.
319. Landau, S. W., and Gay, L. N.: Comparative study of anti-histamine substances: I. Introduction and Dale experiments, *Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp.* 83:330, 1948.
320. Landau, S. W.; Marriott, H. J. L., and Gay, L. N.: Comparative study of antihistamine substances: II. Activity in vivo against histamine intoxication and anaphylactic shock of guinea pigs, *Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp.* 83:343, 1948.
321. Lands, A. M.; Hoppe, J. O.; Siegmund, O. H., and Luduena, F. D.: The pharmacological properties of three new anti-

- histaminic drugs, *J. Pharmacol. & Exper. Therap.* 95:45, 1949.
322. Landsteiner, K.: *The Specificity of Serological Reactions* (rev. ed.; Cambridge: Harvard University Press, 1945).
323. Last, M. R., and Loew, E. R.: Effect of antihistamine drugs on increased capillary permeability following intradermal injections of horse serum, histamine, and other agents in rabbits, *J. Pharmacol. & Exper. Therap.* 89:81, 1947.
324. Laymon, C. W., and Schmid, J. F.: The topical application of Thephorin in pruritic dermatoses, *Ann. Allergy* 6:638, 1948.
325. Leavitt, M. D., and Gastineau, C.: Treatment of allergy to insulin with diphenhydramine hydrochloride: Report of two cases, *Arch. Int. Med.* 80:271, 1947.
326. Omitted.
327. Lee, H. M.; Dinwiddie, W. G., and Chen, K. K.: The antihistamine action of N-(2-pyridyl)-N-(2-thenyl)-N', N'-dimethylethylenediamine hydrochloride, *J. Pharmacol. & Exper. Therap.* 90:83, 1947.
328. Léger, J.; Leith, W., and Rose, B.: Effect of adrenocorticotrophic hormone on anaphylaxis in the guinea pig, *Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med.* 69:465, 1948.
329. Léger, J., and Masson, G.: Effect of antihistaminic substances on the edema produced by egg white in the rat, *Am. J. M. Sc.* 214:305, 1947.
330. Lehmann, G.: Pharmacological properties of a new antihistamine, 2-methyl-9-phenyl-2,3,4,9-tetrahydro-1-pyridindene (Thephorin) and derivatives, *J. Pharmacol. & Exper. Therap.* 92:249, 1948.
331. Lemley, J. M., and Laskowski, M.: The action of histaminase in vivo, *Arch. Biochem.* 6:115, 1945.
332. Leonard, F., and Solmssen, U. V.: 2-thenyl substituted diamines with antihistaminic activity, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 70:2064, 1948.
333. Leopold, I. H.; Dean, W., and Blazar, H.: An evaluation of an antihistaminic drug in experimental uveitis, *Am. J. Ophth.* 32:31, 1949.
334. Levin, S. J.:  $\beta$ -dimethylaminoethyl benzhydryl ether hydrochloride (Benadryl): Its use in allergic diseases, *J. Allergy* 17:145, 1946.



- 335. Levin, S. J., and Moss, S. S.: Hydryllin in asthma and hay fever, *J. Michigan M. Soc.* 47:869, 1948.
- 336. Levin, S. J., and Moss, S.S.: Thephorin: Clinical results in allergic children, *J. Pediat.* 34:616, 1949.
- 337. Levitan, B. A.: Rutin in histamine shock, *Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med.* 68:569, 1948.
- 338. Levitan, B. A.: Effects of rutin in horse serum anaphylaxis in the rabbit, *Rev. canad. de biol.* 8:370, 1949.
- 339. Levitan, B. A., and Scott, H. J.: Inhibition of chloroform-adrenaline fibrillation by antihistaminics, *Canad. M. A. J.* 61:303, 1949.
- 340. Levitan, B. A., and Scott, H. J.: Effect of antihistamines on arrhythmias following coronary artery ligation, *Canad. M. A. J.* 61:306, 1949.
- 341. Levy, L., II, and Seabury, J. H.: Spirometric evaluation of Benadryl in asthma, *J. Allergy* 18:244, 1947.
- 342. Lewis, T.: *The Blood Vessels of the Human Skin and Their Responses* (London: Shaw & Sons, Ltd., 1927).
- 343. Lewis, T., and Grant, R. T.: Vascular reactions of the skin to injury: II. The liberation of histamine-like substance in injured skin; the underlying cause of factitious urticaria and of wheals produced by burning, and observations upon the nervous control of certain skin reactions, *Heart* 11:209, 1924.
- 344. Leya, A.: Contribution a l'étude des anti-histaminiques des synthèse en immunologie: Action de l'Antergan sur la formation des anticorps; leur comportement dans le choc anaphylactique traité par l'Antergan, *Compt. rend. Soc. de biol.* 140:194, 1946.
- 345. Litchfield, J. T., Jr.; Adams, M. R.; Goddard, L.; Jaeger, M. S., and Alonso, L.: 5-halo-2-thenyl derivatives of N,N-dimethyl-N'-2-pyridyl-ethylenediamine as antihistaminics, *Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp.* 81:55, 1947.
- 346. Litchfield, J. T., Jr.; Mayer, E.; Robinson, E. J., and Wadsworth, B. C.: Pharmacology and toxicology of p-fluorobenzyl-DPE, personal communication, June 10, 1948.
- 347. Lo Duca, N.: Epatonefrite mortale da Antergan, *Diagnosi* 3:137, 1947.
- 348. Loew, E. R.: Pharmacology of antihistamine compounds, *Physiol. Rev.* 27:4, 1947.
- 349. Loew, E. R., and Chickering, O.: Gastric secretion in dogs

- treated with histamine antagonist, thymoxyethyldiethylamine, *Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med.* 48:65, 1941.
350. Loew, E. R., and Kaiser, M. E.: Alleviation of anaphylactic shock in guinea pigs with synthetic benzhydryl alkamine ethers, *Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med.* 58:235, 1945.
351. Loew, E. R.; Kaiser, M. E., and Moore, V.: Synthetic benzhydryl alkamine ethers effective in preventing fatal experimental asthma in guinea pigs exposed to atomized histamine, *J. Pharmacol. & Exper. Therap.* 83:120, 1945.
352. Loew, E. R.; Kaiser, M. E., and Moore, V.: Effect of various drugs on experimental asthma produced in guinea pigs by exposure to atomized histamine, *J. Pharmacol. & Exper. Therap.* 86:1, 1946.
353. Loew, E. R.; MacMillan, R., and Kaiser, M.: The antihistamine properties of Benadryl,  $\beta$ -dimethylaminoethyl benzhydryl ether hydrochloride, *J. Pharmacol. & Exper. Therap.* 86:229, 1946.
354. Lofstrom, J. E., and Nurnberger, C. E.: Irradiation sickness: Histamine effect treated with Benadryl, *Am. J. Roentgenol.* 56:211, 1946.
355. Logan, G. B.: The use of Benadryl in treating some of the allergic diseases of childhood, *Proc. Staff Meet., Mayo Clin.* 20:436, 1945.
356. London, I. D., and Moody, M., Jr.: Acute urticaria following Pyribenzamine therapy: A case report, *J. Invest. Dermat.* 13:217, 1949.
357. Lott, G. M.; Krug, E. S., and Glenn, H. R.: A case of drug delirium clinically interpreted as being due to Pyribenzamine, *Journal Lancet* 68:342, 1948.
358. Lovejoy, H. B.; Feinberg, S. M., and Canterbury, E. A.: Local inhibition of histamine flare in man: A method of bioassay of antihistamine drugs, *J. Allergy* 20:350, 1949.
359. Loveless, M. H., and Brown, H.: A comparison between the clinical effects of Pyribenzamine and those of Benadryl, *New England J. Med.* 237:592, 1947.
360. Loveless, M. H., and Dworin, M.: Allergy and antihistamine therapy: A review, *Bull. New York Acad. Med.* 25:473, 1949.
361. Lynch, F. W.: Benadryl in dermatologic therapy, *Arch. Dermat. & Syph.* 55:101, 1947.
362. McElin, T. W., and Horton, B. T.: Clinical observations on



- the use of Benadryl: A new antihistamine substance, *Proc. Staff, Meet., Mayo Clin.* 20:417, 1945.
363. McEvedy, M. B.: Treatment of seasickness aboard ocean-going ships, *Lancet* 1:825, 1949.
364. McGavack, T. H.; Drekter, I. J.; Schutzer, S., and Heisler, A.: Levels for Pyribenzamine and Benadryl in blood and urine following a single orally administered dose, *J. Allergy* 19:251, 1948.
365. McGavack, T. H.; Elias, H., and Boyd, L. J.: The influence of dimethylaminoethyl benzhydryl ether hydrochloride (Benadryl) upon normal persons and upon those suffering from disturbances of the autonomic nervous system, *J. Lab. & Clin. Med.* 31:560, 1946.
366. McGavack, T. H.; Elias, H., and Boyd, L. J.: Some pharmacological and clinical experiences with dimethylaminoethyl benzhydryl ether hydrochloride (Benadryl), *Am. J. M. Sc.* 213:418, 1947.
367. McGavack, T. H.; Schulman, P.; Schutzer, R., and Elias, H.: Effects of topical applications of diphenhydramine hydrochloride (Benadryl), *Arch. Dermat. & Syph.* 57:308, 1948.
368. MacGregor, A. G., and Wood, D. R.: The effect of Neo-antergan and of Benadryl on serum-induced myocarditis in rabbits, *Brit. J. Pharmacol.* 4:216, 1949.
369. Macht, M. B.; Bader, M., and Mead, J.: The inhibition of frostbite wheals by the iontophoresis of antihistaminic agents, *J. Clin. Investigation* 28:564, 1949.
370. McIntire, F. C.; Roth, L. W., and Shaw, J. L.: The purification of histamine for bioassay, *J. Biol. Chem.* 170:537, 1947.
371. Mackmull, G.: The influence of intravenously administered Benadryl on blood pressure and electrocardiogram, *J. Allergy* 19:365, 1948.
372. McMaster, P. D., and Kruse, H.: Peripheral vascular reactions in anaphylaxis of the mouse, *J. Exper. Med.* 89:583, 1949.
373. Macy, D., Jr., and Horton, B. T.: Treatment of migraine with histamine: Review of 144 cases, *J. A. M. A.* 137:1110, 1948.
374. Maietta, A. L.: Unusually good results in pollinosis with combined antigen-antihistamine therapy, shortening the treatment of hay fever, *Ann. Allergy* 7:789, 1949.

- 375. Mains, M. P.: Antihistamine ointments for skin protection in radiation therapy, *Radiology* 52:579, 1949.
- 376. Malkiel, S., and Feinberg, S. M.: Unpublished observations.
- 377. Malkiel, S., and Feinberg, S. M.: Unpublished observations.
- 378. Marcus, S.: Aspects of the inhibition of anaphylactic shock in guinea pigs, *Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med.* 66:181, 1947.
- 379. Marin, A.; Foisy, J. P., and LeClerc, G.: Echec du traitement de la dermite atopique par un antihistaminique, *Union méd. du Canada* 79:381, 1950.
- 380. Markow, H.; Bloom, S., and Leibowitz, H.: An evaluation of Hydryllin (diphenhydramine and aminophyllin) in the symptomatic treatment of allergy, *New York State J. Med.* 48:2390, 1948.
- 381. Martin, G. J.; Graff, M.; Brendel, R., and Beiler, J. M.: Effect of vitamin P compounds on the action of histidine decarboxylase, *Arch. Biochem.* 21:177, 1949.
- 382. Martin, G. J., and Moss, J. N.: The inhibition of anaphylaxis in guinea pigs by d-catechin, to be published.
- 382a. Martland, H. S., Jr., and Guck, J. K.: Agranulocytosis after antihistaminic therapy: Report of a case following the prolonged use of tripeleminamine (Pyribenzamine) hydrochloride, *J. A. M. A.* 143:742, 1950.
- 383. Mayer, R. L.: Antihistaminic substances with special reference to Pyribenzamine, *J. Allergy* 17:153, 1946.
- 384. Mayer, R. L.: Pyribenzamine in experimental nonallergic and allergic dermatitis, *J. Invest. Dermat.* 8:67, 1947.
- 385. Mayer, R. L.: Antihistaminic substances and experimental sensitizations, *Ann. Allergy* 5:113, 1947.
- 386. Mayer, R. L., and Brousseau, D.: Antihistaminic substances in histamine poisoning and anaphylaxis of mice, *Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med.* 63:187, 1946.
- 387. Mayer, R. L.; Brousseau, D., and Eisman, P. C.: Pyribenzamine aerosol inhalation and its influence on histamine poisoning and anaphylaxis, *Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med.* 64:92, 1947.
- 388. Mayer, R. L.; Eisman, P. C., and Aronson, K.: Some immunological aspects of antihistamine substances, *J. Bact.* 52:257, 1946.
- 389. Mayer, R. L.; Hays, H. W.; Brousseau, D.; Mathieson, D.; Rennick, B., and Yonkman, F. F.: Pyribenzamine (N'-pyr-



- idyl-N'-benzyl-N-dimethylethylenediamine HCl), an antagonist of histamine, *J. Lab. & Clin. Med.* 31:749, 1946.
390. Mayer, R. L.; Hutterer, C. P., and Scholz, C. R.: Antihistaminic and antianaphylactic activity of some  $\alpha$ -pyridinoethylenediamines, *Science* 102:93, 1945.
391. Mayer, R. L., and Kull, F. C.: Influence of Pyribenzamine and Antistine upon the action of hyaluronidase, *Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med.* 66:392, 1947.
392. Mayo Foundation for Medical Education and Research: Benadryl symposium, *Proc. Staff Meet., Mayo Clin.* 20:417, 1945.
393. Meier, R., and Bucher, K.: Pharmakologie des 2-(N-phenyl-N-benzylaminomethyl)-imidazoline (Antistine), *Schweiz. med. Wchnschr.* 76:294, 1946.
394. Middleton, J. W., and Rider, J. A.: Antihistamines in the treatment of the common cold: A preliminary report, *Dis. of Chest* 16:879, 1949.
395. Miller, J.: The parenteral use of Neo-Antergan, *Ann. Allergy* 8:68, 1950.
396. Millner, T., and Hurst, A.: Tuberculosis and antihistaminics, *Dis. of Chest* 16:870, 1949.
397. Moersch, R. U.; Rivers, A. B., and Morlock, C. G.: Some results of the gastric secretory response of patients having duodenal ulcer noted during the administration of Benadryl, *Gastroenterology* 7:91, 1946.
- 397a. Monash, D.: Personal communication.
398. Monchek, M.: Clinical experiences with a new antihistaminic drug: Thephorin, *Journal Lancet* 68:428, 1948.
399. Morris, H. C., and Dragstedt, C. A.: The antihistamine effect of imidazol, *Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med.* 59:311, 1945.
400. Moseley, V.: The use of tripeleminamine hydrochloride (Pyribenzamine) as a topical anesthetic, *Am. J. Digest. Dis.* 15:410, 1948.
401. Mosko, M. M., and Peterson, W. L.: Sensitization to Antistine, *J. Invest. Dermat.* 14:1, 1950.
402. Moynahan, E. J., and Watson, O.: Failure of antihistamine drugs to inhibit hyaluronidase in vitro, *Nature, London* 163:173, 1949.
403. Murray, H. G.: The treatment of head colds with an antihistaminic drug, *Indust. Med.* 18:215, 1949.

404. Naide, M.: Diphenhydramine (Benadryl) for nocturnal leg cramps, *J. A. M. A.* 142:1140, 1950.
405. Netter, E.: Effects of Pyribenzamine and Benadryl on chick embryo and on vascular phenomena induced by normal serum, *Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med.* 65:90, 1947.
406. Nilzén, A.: Studies in histamine (H-substance) with special reference to the conditions obtaining in urticaria and related skin-changes, *Acta dermat.-venereol.* 27 (supp. 17): 1, 1947.
407. Nilzén, A.: The action of histamine antagonists on the histamine wheal and the eczema test (patch test), *Acta dermat.-venereol.* 30:1, 1950.
408. Notier, V. A., and Roth, G. M.: Treatment of hypersensitivity to cold with Benadryl: Report of a case, *Proc. Staff Meet., Mayo Clin.* 21:170, 1946.
409. O'Leary, P. A., and Farber, E. M.: Evaluation of  $\beta$ -dimethylaminoethyl benzhydryl ether hydrochloride (Benadryl) in the treatment of urticaria, scleroderma and allied disturbances, *Proc. Staff Meet., Mayo Clin.* 21:295, 1946.
410. Oppenheim, M., and Yacullo, W. A.: Generalized angiomatosis simplex cutis following an erythema morbilliforme probably caused by the use of Pyribenzamine, *Brit. J. Dermat.* 60:368, 1948.
411. Orskov, J.: A little experiment with ACTH and anaphylactic shock, *Acta path. et microbiol. Scandinav.* 26:917, 1949.
412. Osborne, E. D.; Jordan, J. W., and Rausch, N. G.: Clinical use of a new antihistaminic compound (Pyribenzamine) in certain cutaneous disorders, *Arch. Dermat. & Syph.* 55:309, 1947.
413. Ottolenghi-Lodigiani, F.: Studi sull'istamina della cute umana normale e patologica: La istamina e le sostanze istaminosimili nel liquido di bolla nel corso dei processi patologici della pelle, *Gior. ital. dermat. e sif.* 87:153, 1946.
414. Overton, J.: "Antistin" in dermatology, *Brit. M. J.* 1:874, 1948.
415. Parrot, J. L.: Les modifications apportées par un antagoniste de l'histamine (2339RP) à la réaction vasculaire locale de la peau, *Compt. rend. Soc. de biol.* 136:715, 1942.
416. Paton, W. D. M.; Fulton, F., and Andrewes, C. H.: Assessment of "cold cures," *Lancet* 1:935, 1949 (letter to the editor).
417. Peck, S. M.; Finkler, B.; Mayer, G. G., and Michelfelder, T.:



- Effects of various modes of administration of *Pyribenzamine* on the histamine wheal and epidermal sensitivity reactions, *J. Invest. Dermat.* 14:177, 1950.
418. Peirce, J. D., and Mothersill, M. H.: Treatment of allergic symptoms with a new antihistamine drug, *J. Indiana M. A.* 40:739, 1947.
419. Pellerat, M. J., and Murat, M.: L'histamine cutanée: Ses variations sous l'influence du froid, au cours de l'allergie tuberculinique et dans certaines dermatoses, *Ann. de dermat. et syph.* 6:76, 1946.
420. Pennypacker, C. S., and Sharples, I.: Clinical study of a new antihistaminic drug, *Thephorin*, *Pennsylvania M. J.* 51:1407, 1948.
421. Perlman, E.: A quantitative method for the determination of antihistaminic compounds containing the pyridine radical, *J. Pharmacol. & Exper. Therap.* 95:465, 1949.
422. Perry, D. J.: The local use of *Benadryl* ointment, *J. Invest. Dermat.* 9:95, 1947.
423. Perry, D. J.; Falk, M. S., and Pilsbury, D. M.: A comparison of the effect of antihistamine drugs in human subjects by means of histamine iontophoresis, *J. Invest. Dermat.* 11:461, 1948.
424. Perry, D. J., and Hearin, D. L.: Experimental determination in human subjects of the duration of "antihistaminic" activity of orally administered compounds, *J. Invest. Dermat.* 13:29, 1949.
425. Peters, J. A.; Horton, B. T., and Boothby, W. M.: The effect of continuous intravenous administration of histamine on basal metabolism in human beings, *J. Clin. Investigation* 24:611, 1945.
426. Peterson, J. C., and Bishop, L. K.: The treatment of serum sickness with *Benadryl*, *J. A. M. A.* 133:1277, 1947.
427. Phillips, W. F. P., and Fishbein, W. I.: An antihistaminic analgesic preparation in the therapy of colds: Final report, *Indust. Med. & Surg.* 19:201, 1950.
428. Portier, P., and Richet, C.: De l'action anaphylactique de certains venins, *Compt. rend. Soc. de biol.* 54:170, 1902.
429. Poulsen, H.: Antihistaminica som Antidot mod curarepraeparaters histaminliguende Virkning, *Nord. med.* 41:627, 1949.
430. Pratt, A. G.: Paradoxical effect of antihistamine drug, *Arch. Dermat. & Syph.* 61:667, 1950.

431. Prince, H. E., and Etter, R. L.: Histaminic treatment of foreign protein type reactions, *Ann. Allergy* 6:386, 1948.
432. Raiman, R. J.; Later, E. R., and Necheles, H.: Effect of rutin in anaphylactic and histamine shock, *Science* 106:368, 1947.
433. Randolph, T. G., and Rollins, J. P.: Relief of allergic diseases by ACTH therapy, in Mote, J. R. (ed.): *Proceedings of the First Clinical ACTH Conference* (Philadelphia: The Blakiston Company, 1950), p. 479.
434. Ratner, B.: An evaluation of Benadryl, Pyribenzamine, and other so-called antihistaminic drugs in the treatment of allergy, *J. Pediat.* 30:583, 1947.
435. Rattner, H., and Griffin, J.: Dermatitis following ingestion of Pyribenzamine, *Am. Pract.* 2:754, 1948.
436. Reid, W. B., Jr.; Wright, J. B.; Kolloff, H. G., and Hunter, J. H.: Histamine antagonists. II. N-(pyrrolidylalkyl)-phenothiazines, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 70:3100, 1948.
437. Reinhard, J. F., and Scudi, J. V.: Pharmacological characteristics of Neohetramine, a new antihistaminic drug: I., *Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med.* 66:512, 1947.
438. Reiss, F., and Kern, A. B.: Clinical and experimental evaluation of Thephorin ointment, *J. Allergy* 21:160, 1950.
439. Rennick, B.; Chess, D.; Hays, H. W.; Mathieson, D.; Mayer, R. L., and Yonkmann, F. F.: The antianaphylactic and antihistaminic activity and toxicity of N'-pyridyl-N'-benzyl-N,N-dimethylethylenediamine HCl, *Federation Proc.* 4:133, 1945.
440. Reubi, F.: L'influence des antihistaminiques de synthèse sur le développement et l'évolution de la néphrite expérimentale, *Helvet. med. acta* 12:547, 1945.
441. Reynolds, J.; Kahn, A. G., Jr., and Levy, J. S.: The use of antihistaminic drugs for local anesthesia for gastroscopy, *Gastroenterology* 14:535, 1950.
442. Reynolds, J. L., and Horton, B. T.: Clinical observations on the use of Thephorin (NU-1504): A new antihistaminic agent, *Proc. Staff Meet., Mayo Clin.* 22:574, 1947.
443. Rich, A. R.: Hypersensitivity in disease with especial reference to periarteritis nodosa, rheumatic fever, disseminated lupus erythematosus and rheumatoid arthritis, *Harvey Lect.* 42:106, 1947.
444. Rich, A. R., and Gregory, J. E.: The experimental demon-



- stration that periarteritis nodosa is a manifestation of hypersensitivity, Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp. 72:65, 1943.
445. Rieveschl, G., and Gruhzt, O. M.: A toxicologic study of histamine antagonist  $\beta$ -dimethylaminoethyl benzhydryl ether hydrochloride (Benadryl), Federation Proc. 4:150, 1945.
446. Rigdon, R. H.: Effect of antihistamine on the localization of trypan blue in xylene-treated areas of the skin, Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med. 71:637, 1949.
447. Rives, H. F.; Ward, B. H., and Hicks, M. L.: A fatal reaction to methapyrilene (Thenylene), J. A. M. A. 140:1022, 1949.
448. Roberts, R. C.; Crockett, K. A., and Laipply, T. C.: Effects of salicylates and Benadryl on experimental anaphylactic hypersensitive vascular and cardiac lesions, Arch. Int. Med. 83:48, 1949.
449. Rocha e Silva, M.: Recent advances concerning the histamine problem, J. Allergy 15: 399, 1944.
450. Rocha e Silva, M.: Inhibition of histamine effects by compounds of histamine, histidine and arginine, J. Pharmacol. & Exper. Therap. 80:399, 1944.
451. Rodney, G., and Fell, N.: Histamine protein complexes: Synthesis and immunological investigation: II.  $\beta$ -(5-imidazolyl)-ethyl carbamide protein, J. Immunol. 41:251, 1943.
452. Rose, B.: Production of symptoms by subcutaneous injection of histamine without increase of the blood histamine, Science 92:454, 1940.
453. Rose, B.: Studies on blood histamine in patients with allergy: II. Alterations in the blood histamine in patients with allergic disease, J. Clin. Investigation 20:419, 1941.
454. Rose, B.: Studies on the effect of ACTH on eosinophilia and bronchial asthma, in Mote, J. R. (ed.): *Proceedings of the First Clinical ACTH Conference* (Philadelphia: The Blakiston Company, 1950), p. 491.
455. Rose, B.: Unpublished observations.
456. Rose, B.; Entin, M., and Baxter, H.: In press.
457. Rose, B.; Harkness, E. V., and Forbes, R. P.: Plasma histaminase in pregnancy, 1946 Annual Report of the John and Mary R. Markle Foundation, p. 69.
458. Rose, B.; Harkness, E. V., and Forbes, R. P.: Plasma histaminase, 1947 Annual Report of the John and Mary R. Markle Foundation, p. 69.

459. Rose, B.; Pare, J. A. P.; Pump, K., and Stanford, R. L.: Preliminary report on adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) in asthma, *Canad. M. A. J.* 62:6, 1950.
460. Rose, B., and Weil, P.: Blood histamine in the rabbit during anaphylactic shock, *Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med.* 42:494, 1939.
461. Rose, B., and Weil, P.: Studies on histamine content of blood and tissues of the rabbit during anaphylactic shock, *J. Immunol.* 42:161, 1941.
462. Rose, J. M.; Feinberg, A. R.; Friedlaender, S., and Feinberg, S. M.: Histamine antagonists: VII. Comparative antianaphylactic activity of some new antihistaminic drugs, *J. Allergy* 18:149, 1947.
463. Rosenberg, M. H., and Blumenthal, L. S.: The clinical uses of intravenous diphenhydramine hydrochloride (Benadryl hydrochloride), *Am. J. M. Sc.* 216:158, 1948.
464. Rosenthal, S. M., and Tabor, H.: An improved colorimetric method for the estimation of histamine, *J. Pharmacol. & Exper. Therap.* 92:425, 1948.
465. Rosenthal, S. R., and Brown, M. L.: Thymoxyethyldiethylamine as an antagonist of histamine and of anaphylactic reactions, *J. Immunol.* 38:259, 1940.
466. Ross, J. V. M.: Ocular effects of systemic administration of antihistamines, *Am. J. Ophth.* 32:987, 1949.
467. Rostorfer, H. H., and Laskowski, M.: Action of histaminase preparations in the Heidenhain dog, *Am. J. Digest. Dis.* 12:337, 1945.
468. Roth, L. W.; Richards, R. K.; Everett, G. M., and Shepperd, I. M.: Pharmacological properties of N,N-dimethyl-N'-( $\alpha$ -pyridyl)-N'-( $\alpha$ -thenyl)-ethylenediamine hydrochloride (Thenylene hydrochloride): A new antihistamine compound, *Arch. internat. de pharmacodyn. et de thérap.* 75:362, 1948.
469. Roth, L. W.; Richards, R. K., and Shepperd, I. M.: Some pharmacological properties of a new antihistamine compound, *Federation Proc.* 6:366, 1947.
470. Roth, L. W.; Richards, R. K., and Shepperd, I. M.: Pharmacological studies of a new antihistamine compound [N-(p-chlorobenzhydryl)-N'-methyl piperazine hydrochloride], *Arch. internat. de pharmacodyn. et de thérap.* 80:378, 1949.
471. Roth, L. W., and Shepperd, I. M.: Absence of protective



- action of rutin in anaphylactic and histamine shock, *Science* 108:410, 1948.
472. Rothman, S., and Henningsen, A. B.: The sunburn-protecting effect of para-aminobenzoic acid, *J. Invest. Dermat.* 9:307, 1947.
- 472a. Rubin, S. S.; Kaplan, M. A.; Aaronson, A. L., and Feinberg, S. M.: Potassium salts in the treatment of pollinosis: A clinical evaluation, *J. A. M. A.* 114:2359, 1940.
473. Rubitsky, H. J.; Bresnick, E.; Levinson, L.; Risman, G., and Segal, M. S.: Parenteral and aerosol administration of antihistaminic agent in the treatment of severe bronchial asthma, *New England J. Med.* 241:853, 1949.
474. Ryan, G. M. S., and Wood, J. S.: Benadryl in the treatment of parkinsonism, *Lancet* 1:258, 1949.
475. Sachs, B. A.: The toxicity of Benadryl: Report of a case and review of the literature, *Ann. Int. Med.* 29:135, 1948.
476. St. Karady, and Bentsah, A.: Die Prophylaxe der Kollapsbereitschaft durch kunstliche Veränderung der Histaminempfindlichkeit, *Ztschr. f. klin. Med.* 128:640, 1935.
477. Sangster, W.; Grossman, M. I., and Ivy, A. C.: The effect of two new histamine antagonists (Benadryl and compound 63) on histamine stimulated gastric secretion in the dog, *Gastroenterology* 6:436, 1946.
- 477a. della Santa, R.; Plattner, H. C., and de Beule, R.: Antihistaminique de synthèse et résistance capillaire, *Rev. méd. de la Suisse Rom.* 67:716, 1947.
478. Sarber, R. W.: Effect of Benadryl hydrochloride on the tuberculin reaction in guinea pigs, *Am. Rev. Tuberc.* 57:504, 1948.
479. Schiller, I. W., and Lowell, F. C.: Trimeton, a new antihistamine drug, *New England J. Med.* 240:215, 1949.
480. Schindler, O.: Klinische Untersuchungen mit der Antihistaminsubstanz Antistin Ciba, *Schweiz. med. Wchnschr.* 76:300, 1946.
481. Schwartz, E.: Comparative toxicity and side effects of the antihistamine drugs, *Ann. Allergy* 7:770, 1949.
482. Schwartz, E., and Leibowitz, H.: Local nasal therapy with Pyribenzamine in seasonal and nonseasonal hay fever, *J. Allergy* 20:269, 1949.
483. Schwartz, E.; Levin, L., and Wallman, M.: Clinical evaluation of thenylpyramine hydrochloride (Histadyl) in the

- treatment of allergic symptoms, *Ann. Allergy* 8:117, 1950.
484. Schwartz, E., and Wolf, J.: Histamine antagonists: A comparative study of their effect on histamine and allergic skin wheals, *J. Allergy* 20:32, 1949.
485. Schwartzberg S., and Wilkerson, D.: Prolonged reaction to Benadryl, *J. A. M. A.* 133:393, 1947.
486. Scudi, J. V.; Reinhard, J. F., and Dreyer, N. B.: Pharmacologic characteristics of Neohetramine, a new antihistaminic drug: III, *J. Allergy* 19:184, 1948.
487. Seegal, B. C.: Anaphylaxis, in Gay, F. P.: *Agents of Disease and Host Resistance* (Springfield, Ill.: Charles C Thomas, Publisher, 1935), p. 36.
488. Segal, M. S.; Beakey, J. F.; Bresnick, E., and Levinson, L.: Evaluation of therapeutic substances employed for the relief of bronchospasm, *Bull. New England M. Center* 10:21, 1948.
489. Selecman, F. A., and Miller, E. W.: Antihistamine therapy in thrombophlebitis migrans, *Surgery* 25:605, 1949.
490. Selye, H.: The alarm reaction, *Canad. M. A. J.* 34:706, 1936.
491. Selye, H.: Studies on adaptation, *Endocrinology* 21:169, 1937.
492. Selye, H.: Über den Einfluss der Alarmreaktion und der Histaminbehandlung auf den Wasserstoffwechsel bei Nieren-schadegung, *Klin. Wchnschr.* 17:666, 1938.
493. Serafini, U.: Studies on histamine and histamine antagonists, *J. Allergy* 19:256, 1948.
494. Serafini, U., and Biozzi, G.: L'equivalente istaminico del sangue dopo fatica fisica nei soggetti normali e nei polli-nosici, *Clin. nuova* 2:357, 1946.
495. Sevitt, S.: The failure of antihistamine drugs to influence the local vascular changes in experimental burns, *Brit. J. Exper. Path.* 30:540, 1949.
496. Shaw, C. R., and Wightman, H. B.: A study on the treatment of the common cold with an antihistamine drug, *New York State J. Med.* 50: 1109, 1950.
497. Sheldon, J. M.; Fell, N.; Johnston, J. H., and Howes, H. A.: A clinical study of histamine azoprotein in allergic disease, *J. Allergy* 13:18, 1941.
498. Sheldon, J. M.; Lovell, R. G., and Kiess, R. D.: Observations on the effect of antihistaminic compounds on the cor-



- neal reflex of rabbits, Univ. Hosp. Bull., Ann Arbor 15:42, 1949.
499. Sheldon, J. M.; Weller, K. E.; Haley, R. R., and Fulton, J. K.: Clinical observations with Decapryn, a new antihistaminic compound, Univ. Hosp. Bull., Ann Arbor 14:13, 1948.
500. Sherman, J., and Walzer, E. H.: The responsiveness of human skin to histamine introduced by the electrophoretic technic, J. Invest. Dermat. 9:187, 1947.
501. Sherman, W. B., and Cooke, R. A.: Dermatitis following the use of Pyribenzamine and Antistine, J. Allergy 21:63, 1950.
502. Sherrod, T. R.; Loew, E. R., and Schloemer, H. F.: Pharmacological properties of antihistamine drugs Benadryl, Pyribenzamine and Neo-Antergan, J. Pharmacol. & Exper. Therap. 89:247, 1947.
503. Shibata, S.: Beeinflussung der Darmreaktion des Histamins durch Verschiedene Aminosäuren, Osaka Igk. Z. 39:549, 1940 (abst., Jap. J. M. Sc. [IV. Pharmacol.] 14:32, 1941).
504. Silverman, L. B.: The treatment of pruritus from chicken pox with Pyribenzamine, J. Pediat. 35:442, 1949.
505. Simon, S. W., and Seyler, L. E.: Dramamine in pilots, J. Aviation Med. 20:371, 1949.
506. Slater, B. J., and Francis, N.: Benadryl, a contributing cause of an accident, J. A. M. A. 132:212, 1946.
507. Smith, W., and Humphrey, J. H.: The effect of sodium salicylate upon hypersensitivity reactions, Brit. J. Exper. Path. 30:560, 1949.
508. Snyder, F. H.; Klahm, G. R., and Werner, H. W.: Studies on the metabolism of 2-[ $\alpha$ -(2-dimethylaminoethoxy)- $\alpha$ -methylbenzyl]-pyridine succinate (Decapryn succinate), J. Am. Pharm. A. 37:420, 1948.
509. Sondern, C. W., and Breivogel, P. J.: N,N-dimethyl-N'-benzyl-N'-2-thiazolylethylenediamine, U. S. Patent No. 2440703, May 4, 1948.
510. Southwell, N.: "Anthisan" in treatment of asthma and hay-fever, Brit. M. J. 1:877, 1948.
511. Spain, W. C., and Pflum, F. A.: An evaluation of the present status of antihistaminic substances, New York State J. Med. 48:2272, 1948.
512. Sperber, N.; Papa, D.; Schwenk, E., and Sherlock, M.: Pyri-

- dyl-substituted alkamine ethers as antihistaminic agents, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 71:887, 1949.
513. *Staff Report*: The cold war in antihistaminics, *Chem. & Engin. News* 28:846, 1950.
514. Staub, A.-M.: Recherches sur quelques bases synthétiques antagonistes de l'histamine, *Ann. Inst. Pasteur* 63:400, 1939.
515. Staub, A.-M.: Recherches sur quelques bases synthétiques antagonistes de l'histamine, *Ann. Inst. Pasteur* 63:420, 1939.
516. Staub, A.-M.: Recherches sur quelques bases synthétiques antagonistes de l'histamine, *Ann. Inst. Pasteur* 63:485, 1939.
517. Staub, A.-M., and Bovet, D.: Action de la thymoxyéthyl-diethylamine (929F) et des éthers phénoliques sur le choc anaphylactique du cobaye, *Compt. rend. Soc. de biol.* 125: 818, 1937.
518. Stephens, C. A. L., Jr., and Holbrook, W. P.: Masked collagen disease, *Arizona Med.* 6:21, 1949.
519. Sternberg, L.: Unusual side reaction of hysteria from Benadryl, *J. Allergy* 18:417, 1947.
520. Sternberg, L., and Gottesman, J.: Clinical observations with Thephorin, a new drug, *Ann. Allergy* 6:569, 1948.
521. Sternberg, T. H.; Perry, D. J., and LeVan, P.: Antihistaminic drugs: Comparative activity in man as measured by histamine iontophoresis, *J. A. M. A.* 142:969, 1950.
522. Stocker, F. W.: The use of antihistaminic drugs in ophthalmology, *South. M. J.* 43:242, 1950.
523. Stone, C. A., and Loew, E. R.: Effect of various drugs on epinephrine-induced pulmonary edema in rabbits, *Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med.* 71:122, 1949.
524. Strauss, M. J.: Eczematous contact-type allergy to Pyribenzamine, *J. Invest. Dermat.* 11:155, 1948.
525. Strauss, W. T.: Antihistamine therapy of bee stings, *J. A. M. A.* 140: 603, 1949.
526. Strickland, B. A., Jr., and Hahn, G. L.: The effectiveness of Dramamine in the prevention of airsickness, *Science* 109: 359, 1949.
527. Omitted.
528. Sulzberger, M. B.: Discussion in Mayer, R. L. (384).
529. Sulzberger, M. B.: Personal communication, April 21, 1950.
530. Sulzberger, M. B.; Baer, R. L., and Levin, H. B.: Local therapy with Pyribenzamine hydrochloride, *J. Invest. Dermat.* 10:41, 1948.



- 531. Sutherland, J. M.: Two cases of periarteritis nodosa, with observations on aetiology, diagnosis and treatment, *Brit. M. J.* 1:832, 1948.
- 532. Swanberg, H.: The source of the histaminolytic enzyme in the blood of pregnant women, *Acta physiol. Scandinav.* 16:83, 1948.
- 533. Swartz, H.: Untoward side-effect following Benadryl administration, *New York State J. Med.* 48:88, 1948.
- 534. Swyer, G. I. M.: Anti-histamine effect of sodium salicylate and its bearing upon the skin-diffusing activity of hyaluronidase, *Biochem. J.* 42:28, 1948.
- 535. Taub, S. J.; Miller, R. E., and Taub, R. G.: A clinical investigation of Tagathen (chlorothen citrate) (N,N-dimethyl-N'-(2-pyridyl)-N'-(5-chloro-2-thenyl) ethylenediamine dihydrate) with a comparison of various antihistaminic agents, *Am. Pract.* 3:586, 1949.
- 536. Tebrock, H. E.: Management of the common cold with Neohetramine (Anahist): A preliminary report, *Indust. Med. & Surg.* 19:39, 1950.
- 537. Thomas, W. A., and Butler, S.: Treatment of migraine by intravenous histamine, *Am. J. Med.* 1:39, 1946.
- 538. Tislow, R.; Labelle, A.; Makovsky, A. J.; Reed, M. A. G.; Cunningham, M. D.; Emele, J. F.; Grandage, A., and Roggenhofer, R. J. M.: Pharmacological evaluation of Trime-ton, 1-phenyl-1-(2-pyridyl)-3-N,N-dimethylpropylamine, and Chlor-Trimeton, 1-(p-chlorophenyl)-1-(2-pyridyl)-3-N,N-dimethylpropylamine, *Federation Proc.* 8:338, 1949.
- 539. Tobias, M.: Anthisan poisoning, *Brit. M. J.* 1:1098, 1949 (correspondence).
- 540. Traub, T. B.; Friedemann, U., and Landstadt, D.: A new method for quantitative evaluation of activity of antihistaminic substances and its application to the study of  $\beta$ -dimethylaminoethyl benzhydryl ether hydrochloride (Benadryl), *J. Allergy* 18:273, 1947.
- 541. Troescher-Elam, E.; Ancona, G. R., and Kerr, W. J.: Histamine-like substance present in nasal secretions of common cold and allergic rhinitis, *Am. J. Physiol.* 144:711, 1945.
- 542. Tweedall, D. C., and O'Connor, W. B.: Pyribenzamine in therapy and prophylaxis of rhus dermatitis, *J. Invest. Dermat.* 10:301, 1948.

543. Tyler, D. B.: Dramamine and motion sickness, *Science* 110:170, 1949.
544. Tyson, W. G.: Hypersensitivity to sunlight and dysmenorrhea controlled with Benadryl, *J. Invest. Dermat.* 7:209, 1946.
545. U. S. Medical Unit No. 4: Observations on the efficiency of Benadryl in the therapy of rheumatic fever, *U. S. Nav. M. Bull.* 48:380, 1948.
546. Omitted.
547. Urbach, K. F.: Nature and probable origin of conjugated histamine excreted after ingestion of histamine, *Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med.* 70:146, 1949.
548. Urbach, K. F., and Giscafré, L: Identification of histamine in the blood by paper chromatography, *Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med.* 68:430, 1948.
549. Valley-Radot, P.; Hamburger, J., and Halpern, B.: Un nouvel antihistaminique de synthèse, *Presse méd.* 55:661, 1947.
550. Vallery-Radot, P.; Hamburger, J., and Halpern, B.: Activité thérapeutique des dérivés de la thiodiphénylamine dans les états allergiques, *Semaine d. Hôp. Paris* 24:655, 1948.
551. Vallery-Radot, P.; Mauric, G.; Halpern, B. N.; Domart, A., and Holtzer, Mme.: Etude quantitative de quelques antihistaminiques de synthèse sur la réaction de Prausnitz-Küstner, *Semaine d. Hôp. Paris* 24:666, 1948.
552. Vander Brook, M. J.; Olson, K. J.; Richmond, M. T., and Kuizenga, M. H.: Pharmacology of a new antihistamine,  $\beta$ -pyrrolidine-ethyl-phenothiazine (Pyrrolazote), *J. Pharmacol. & Exper. Therap.* 94:197, 1948.
553. Van Meter, J. C., and Oleson, J. J.: Effect of Tagathen on histamine-induced gastric lesions in guinea pigs, *Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med.* 71:163, 1949.
554. Vaughan, J. R., Jr.; Anderson, G. W.; Clapp, R. C.; Clark, J. H.; English, J. P.; Howard, K. L.; Marson, H. W.; Sutherland, L. H., and Denton, J. J.: Antihistamine agents: IV. Halogenated N,N-dimethyl-N'-benzyl-N'-(2-pyridyl)-ethylenediamines, *J. Organic Chem.* 14:228, 1949.
555. Waldbott, G. L.: Clinical results with Benadryl, *J. Allergy* 17:142, 1946.
556. Waldbott, G. L., and Borden, R.: Clinical evaluation of Neohetramine, a new antihistamine, *Ann. Allergy* 6:305, 1948.



- 557. Waldriff, G. A.; Davis, J., and Lewis, G. M.: Antihistaminic drugs in dermatologic therapy, *Arch. Dermat. & Syph.* 61:361, 1950.
- 558. Watanabe, K.: Quantitative Untersuchungen über den gehalt an darkmontrahierenden Stoffen von Lunge und Leber bei Meerschweinchen in Stadium der Eiweissensibilisierung und im anaphylaktischen Shock, *Ztschr. f. Immunitätsforsch. u. exper. Therap.* 72:50, 1931.
- 559. Way, E. L., and Dailey, R. E.: Adsorption, distribution and excretion of tripeleppamine (Pyribenzamine), *Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med.* 73:423, 1950.
- 560. Weeks, R. E., and Gunnar, R. M.: Effect of tripeleppamine hydrochloride on acute inflammation, *Arch. Path.* 48:178, 1949.
- 561. Weil, H.: Unusual side effects from Benadryl, *J. A. M. A.* 133:393, 1947.
- 562. Weiser, R. S.; Evans, E., and St. Vincent, L.: Tuberculin reaction: IV. Failure of Pyribenzamine to protect against systemic tuberculin shock, *Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med.* 73:303, 1950.
- 563. Weiser, R. S.; Golub, O. J., and Hamre, D. M.: Studies on anaphylaxis in the mouse, *J. Infect. Dis.* 68:97, 1941.
- 564. Weiss, W. I., and Howard, R. M.: Antihistamine drugs in hay fever: A comparative study with other therapeutic methods, *J. Allergy* 19:271, 1948.
- 565. Wells, H. G.: The present status of the problems of anaphylaxis, *Physiol. Rev.* 1:44, 1921.
- 566. Wells, H. G.: *The Chemical Aspects of Immunity* (ed. 2; New York: The Chemical Catalogue Co., 1925).
- 567. Wells, J. A.; Gray, J. S., and Dragstedt, C. A.: An investigation of the question of histamine tolerance, *J. Allergy* 13:77, 1941.
- 568. Wells, J. A., and Morris, H. C.: Observations on the antagonism of histamine by  $\beta$ -dimethylaminoethyl benzhydryl ether (Benadryl), *Federation Proc.* 4:140, 1945.
- 569. Wells, J. A.; Morris, H. C.; Bull, H. B., and Dragstedt, C. A.: Observations on the nature of the antagonism of histamine by 3-dimethylaminoethyl benzhydryl ether (Benadryl), *J. Pharmacol. & Exper. Therap.* 85:122, 1945.
- 570. Wells, J. A.; Morris, H. C., and Dragstedt, C. A.: Modifica-

- tion of anaphylaxis by Benadryl, *Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med.* 61:104, 1946.
571. Wells, J. A.; Morris, H. C., and Dragstedt, C. A.: Significance of histamine in trypsin shock as determined by Benadryl, *Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med.* 62:209, 1946.
572. Werle, E.: Zur Kenntnis der Aminosäure-decarboxylasen und der Histaminase, *Biochem. Ztschr.* 311:270, 1942.
573. Weston, A. W.: N,N-dimethyl-N'-( $\alpha$ -pyridyl)-N'-( $\alpha$ -thienyl)-ethylenediamine, an antihistamine agent, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 69:980, 1947.
574. Wilcox, H. B., Jr., and Seegal, B. C.: Influence of an ethylenediamine derivative on histamine intoxication and anaphylactic shock in the intact guinea pig and the isolated guinea pig heart, *J. Immunol.* 44:219, 1942.
575. Windaus, A., and Vogt, W.: Synthèse des imidazolyläthylamins, *Ber. deutsch. chem. Ges.* 40:369, 1907.
576. Winder, C. V.; Kaiser, M. E.; Anderson, M. M., and Glassco, E. M.: Myotropic spasmolytic, histaminolytic, and atropine-like actions of some derivatives of dimethylaminoethyl benzhydryl ether hydrochloride (Benadryl), *J. Pharmacol. & Exper. Therap.* 87:121, 1946.
577. Winter, C. A.: A study of comparative antihistaminic activity of six compounds, *J. Pharmacol. & Exper. Therap.* 90:224, 1947.
578. Winter, C. A.: The potentiating effect of antihistamine drugs upon the sedative action of barbiturates, *J. Pharmacol. & Exper. Therap.* 94:7, 1948.
579. Winter, C. A.: Failure of antihistamine drug "Phenergan" to protect against acute pulmonary edema, *Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med.* 72:122, 1949.
580. Wittich, F. W.: Trimeton in the treatment of allergic diseases, *Ann. Allergy* 6:497, 1948.
581. Wolfson, S. A.: Urinary obstruction due to tripeleennamine hydrochloride, *J. A. M. A.* 140:958, 1949.
582. Woolridge, W. D., and Joseph, H. L.: Thephorin in the treatment of disseminated neurodermatitis: A preliminary report, *J. Invest. Dermat.* 11:93, 1948.
583. Yonkman, F. F.; Chess, D.; Hays, H. W.; Rennick, B., and Mayer, R.: Adrenergic potentiation by Pyribenzamine HCl (N'-pyridyl-N'-benzyl-N-dimethylethylenediamine HCl), *Federation Proc.* 5:216, 1946.



584. Yonkman, F. F.; Oppenheimer, E.; Rennick, B., and Pellet, E.: Pharmacodynamic studies of a new antihistaminic agent, Pyribenzamine (N,N-dimethyl-N'-benzyl-N'-( $\alpha$ -pyridyl)-ethylenediamine hydrochloride): II. Effects on smooth muscle of the guinea pig and dog lung, *J. Pharmacol. & Exper. Therap.* 89:31, 1947.
585. Yonkman, F. F.; Roth, F.; Smith, J.; Hansen, N., and Craver, B. N.: Local anesthetic properties of Antistine and Pyribenzamine hydrochloride, *Anesth. & Analg.* 28:170, 1949.
586. Zeller, M.: Nasal Pyribenzamine for relief of hay fever, *Ann. Allergy* 7:103, 1949.





# Index

## A

- Acetomine, 227
- Acetophenetidin: with antihistamines, 183, 221 ff.
- Acetylcholine: spasmogenic action, 63 f.
- Acrosclerosis, 150
- Administration, 168 ff.
- aerosols, 113 f., 188 f.
  - of combined drugs, 180 ff., 220 ff.
  - eye drops, 148 f., 186 f.
  - frequency of, 176 ff.
  - in nasal allergies, 106 f.
  - intravenous or intramuscular, 185 f.
  - by iontophoresis, 165, 189
  - nasal application, 107, 187 f.
  - oral, 107, 183 f.
    - day and evening, 177
    - duration of effect, 176 f.
    - elixirs, 184
    - enteric coating for, 107, 184
  - rectal, 186
  - selection of antihistamine, 178 ff.
  - self-medication — hazards, 213 ff.
  - topical, 141 f., 148 f., 189 f.
  - toxic reactions to, 207
- Adrenocorticotrophic hormone: antiallergic effects, 30 f., 218
- Aerosols
- for asthma, 113 f., 127, 188 f.
  - in prevention of anaphylaxis, 77
- Agranulocytosis: from antihistamines, 206 f.
- AH289, *see* Chlorcyclizine
- Airsickness, 159 f.
- Albuminuria, orthostatic, 71
- Alertness: diminution of, with antihistamines, 193
- Allergy, *see also* specific conditions
- to aspirin, 183
  - causing cough, 112 ff., 122
  - desensitization in, *see* Desensitization therapy
  - differentiated from common cold, 106, 157 f.
  - food, therapy, 192
  - gastrointestinal, 158 f.
  - histamine concept of, 16 ff., 23 f.
  - objections to, 17 f.

Allergy (*cont.*)

- immune response, 104
  - to injected agents, 146 f.
  - manifestations of, variables in, 88 ff.
  - nasal
    - antihistamine therapy, 106
    - decrease of response to antihistamines, 111
    - ephedrine with antihistamines for, 182
    - severe, histamine-excess hypothesis, 105
  - ocular, 147 ff.
  - respiratory, 103 ff.
    - clinical results with individual drugs, 114 ff.
  - response to antihistamines—
    - factors in, 109
  - role in common cold, 152
  - symptomatic therapy—agents, 33 f., 218
  - therapeutic evaluation of drugs in, 88 ff.
- Amino acids: antihistaminic effects, 31
- p-Aminobenzoic acid: absorption of ultraviolet rays by, 165
- Aminophylline
  - with antihistamines, 181
  - in asthma, 34, 113
- Amphetamine: with antihistamines, 181
- Amyloidosis, localized, 144
- Analgesics: combined with antihistamines, 183, 220 ff.
- Anaphylaxis, 14 ff., 73 ff.
  - in dog, 75, 80
  - in guinea pig, 74, 76 ff.
  - histamine concept of, 14 ff.
  - objections to, 17
  - in vitro—prevention, 81
  - in mouse, 75, 80
  - passive—prevention, 79 f.
  - prevention, 29 f., 76 ff.
  - in rabbit, 74 f.
  - role of heparin in, 18
  - species difference, 73 ff.
- Anemia, hemolytic: from antihistamine, 207
- Anesthesia, local: induced by antihistamines, 57, 167
- Angioma simplex: from Pyribenzamine, 208
- Antazoline hydrochloride, 220
- Antergan
  - in allergic dermatitis, 83
  - antianaphylactic activity, 76, 80 f.
  - for atopic dermatitis, 140
  - chemistry of, 37
  - effectiveness, 37
  - effect on bronchoconstriction, 60
  - hepatorenal syndrome from, 210
  - in respiratory allergy, 114 f.
  - toxicity, 114
- Antibody production: and antihistamines, 81
- Antihistamines
  - absorption, 58 f.
    - of ultraviolet rays by, 165
  - antagonism of histamine by, 31 f., 59 ff.
  - bacteriostatic activity, 72
  - chemical classification, 35 ff.
  - crossover trials of, 91
  - detection of—methods, 50
  - distribution and metabolism, 48 ff.
  - drug combinations, 180 ff.
  - duration of effect, 106 f., 176 ff.
  - enteric-coated, 107, 184
  - excretion, 49 f.
  - grouped by sedative action, 179
  - in hypersensitivities, 73 ff.
  - "ideal," 217
  - immunologic effect, 81
  - over-the-counter sale, 151, 213 ff.



- pharmacodynamics of, 55 ff.
- poisoning, course and therapy, 212 f.
- potency
  - assay methods, 50 f., 61 f., 86 ff.
  - experimental vs. clinical, 86 f.
- with prolonged action, 118, 125
- proprietary preparations, 220 ff.
- results of questionnaire on, 215
- selection of, 178 ff.
- self-medication—hazards, 213 ff.
- sensitization to, 209
- therapy
  - evaluation, 88 ff., 108 f., 217 ff.
  - failure, 105, 113
  - limitations, 191 f.
- Antihistaminogenesis, 32 f.
- Antistine
  - antianaphylactic activity, 77
  - for atopic dermatitis, 140
  - chemistry, 47
  - dosage, 115, 172, 173
  - effectiveness, 47
  - effect on bronchoconstriction, 60
  - eye drops, 115, 149, 186 f.
    - sensitization to, 208
  - histamine flare inhibition, 96, 98
  - in ocular allergy, 148 f.
  - preparations, 220
  - in respiratory allergy, 115
  - toxicity, 196 f.
  - for urticaria, 133
- Antopic cream, 228
- APC: with antihistamines, 183, 220 ff.
- Arrhythmia: from antihistamines, 196
- Arthus reaction, 81 f.
- Aspirin: with antihistamines, 183
- Asthma
  - aerosols for, 113 f., 127, 188 f.
  - antiasthmatic therapy, 34, 112, 182
  - Benadryl for, 116 f.
    - causing aggravation of, 198
  - cardiac, 117
  - desensitization in, 105
  - in hay fever, 105, 192
  - histamine, in bioassay, 93
  - histamine in, 22, 23 f.
    - excess hypothesis, 113
  - respiratory function studies, 113
  - response to antihistamines, 105, 112 ff.
- B
- Bacteria: sensitivity reactions—
  - effect of antihistamines on, 72, 82
- Barbiturates: action, with antihistamines, 58
- Barium: spasmogenic action, 63 f.
- Bee stings, 166
- Benadryl
  - aerosols, 188 f.
  - antianaphylactic activity, 77, 80 f.
  - anticholinergic action, 116
  - as antiemetic, 160 f.
  - antispasmodic action, 58
  - for asthma, 116 f.
    - causing aggravation, 198
  - for atopic dermatitis, 140
  - chemistry, 44 f.
  - in collagen diseases, 149 f.
  - for contact dermatitis, 143
  - cutaneous reaction to, 208
  - for dermographism, 139, 185
  - dosage, 172, 173

Benadryl (*cont.*)

- effectiveness, 45, 123
- effect on bronchoconstriction, 60
- effect on pupillary size, 148
- in epilepsy, 164
- histamine flare inhibition, 96, 98
- hyperglycemic effect, 71
- and immunologic responses, 83 f.
- for insulin allergy, 147
- intravenous and intramuscular use, 185 f.
- in liver extract allergy, 147
- for motion sickness, 160
- in parkinsonism, 162
- preparations, 220 f.
- for radiation sickness, 161
- for respiratory allergy, 116 f.
- sedation from, 116, 197 f.
- in status asthmaticus — death due to, 210
- synergistic action with atropine, 162
- in topical anesthesia, 167
- toxicity, 197 f.
- for urticaria, 133 f.
- Bioassay in man, 86 ff.
- environmental variables, 90
- histamine asthma, 93
- patient variables, 88 ff.
- reliability of observer, 92
- of toxicity, 100
- wheal and flare reaction, 93
- Blepharitis, 149
- Blood pressure: effect of antihistamines on, 56 f., 64 f.
- Bone marrow: changes, from antihistamines, 206 f.
- Bromothén: antianaphylactic activity, 78
- Bronchoconstriction
  - histamine-induced, 55
  - prevention of, 59 f.
- Burns: histamine in, 67 f.

## C

- Caffeine: with antihistamines, 181, 183
- Caladryl, 220
- Capathyn, 225
- Capillary permeability: and antagonism of histamine, 65 ff.
- Cardiovascular system
  - effects of antihistamines
    - on experimental lesions, 83 f.
    - toxic, 196
  - effects of histamine, 52 ff.
- Catarrh, vernal, 149, 187
- Caubren, 221
- Cehistra, 231
- Cephalalgia, histamine, 27, 163 f.
- Cerebrospinal fluid pressure:
  - effect of antihistamines, 57
- C5581-H (Bristol)
  - antianaphylactic activity, 78
  - inhibiting histamine flare, 96
- Chemotherapy: use of antihistamines during, 138
- Chickenpox: pruritus of, 145
- Children
  - allergic cough in, 112
  - antihistamine therapy in, 88, 107
  - dosage, 107, 170
  - excitation from, 194
  - overdosage causing death, 210 ff., 214
- Chlorcyclizine
  - antianaphylactic activity, 78, 80
  - for atopic dermatitis, 140
  - chemistry, 48
  - for contact dermatitis, 143
  - dosage, 117, 172, 173
  - effectiveness, 48
  - effect on bronchoconstriction, 60



- preparations, 221
- prolonged action of, 118
- for respiratory allergy, 117 f.
- toxicity, 118, 198
- for urticaria, 134
- Chlorothen**
  - antianaphylactic activity, 78
  - for atopic dermatitis, 141
  - chemistry, 40
  - dosage, 119, 172, 173
  - effectiveness, 40
  - effect on bronchoconstriction, 60
  - histamine flare inhibition, 96
  - preparations, 221
  - for respiratory allergy, 119
  - toxicity, 198
  - for urticaria, 135
- 8-Chlorotheophylline:** for air-sickness, 160
- Chlorprophenpyridamine mal-eate,** 222
- Chlor-Trimeton**
  - antianaphylactic activity, 78
  - for atopic dermatitis, 140
  - chemistry, 46
  - for contact dermatitis, 143
  - dosage, 120, 172, 173
  - effectiveness, 46 f.
  - effect on bronchoconstriction, 60
  - preparations, 222
  - for respiratory allergy, 120 f.
  - toxicity, 121, 198 f.
  - for urticaria, 134
- Circulatory system:** toxic effects of antihistamines, 205 f.
- Cohistine,** 226
- Cold:**
  - sensitivity to, 167
- Cold, common**
  - antihistamines in, 151 ff.
  - basis for trial of, 151 ff.
  - claims for success of, 153 ff.
  - as failure of, 155 ff.
  - differentiated from allergy, 106, 157 f.
  - histamine in secretions of, 152
  - incidence during antihistamine therapy, 158
  - self-diagnosis, 213
  - self-medication, 213 ff.
- Collagen diseases,** 149 f.
- Conjunctivitis**
  - allergic, 115, 148, 187
  - nonbacterial, 148
  - phlyctenular, 148, 149
  - response to antihistamines, 148 f.
- Convulsions:** from antihistamines, 164, 194
- Corenil,** 225
- Coricidin,** 222
- Cortisone:** antiallergic effects, 30 f., 218
- Cough**
  - allergic, 112 f., 122
  - preasthmatic, 112
- Cream, Pyribenzamine,** 143, 189, 229
- Crotalin:** in anaphylaxis, 29
- Curare effects:** antihistamines in, 166
- D**
- Dasikon,** 225
- Deaths:** due to antihistamines, 209 ff.
- Decapryn**
  - in allergic dermatitis, 83
  - antianaphylactic activity, 78, 80
  - chemistry, 45
  - dosage, 121, 172, 174
  - effectiveness, 45
  - effect on bronchoconstriction, 60
  - effect on histamine flare, 96
  - in peptic ulcer and acute gastritis, 159
  - preparations, 222
  - for respiratory allergy, 121
  - toxicity, 199

- Delirium: from antihistamines, 203 f.
- Dermatitis  
 allergic, of eye, 149  
 from antihistamines, 207 f.  
 atopic, 139 ff., 189  
 contact  
   from antihistamines, 186, 189, 208 f.  
   histamine in, 83  
   response to antihistamines, 142 f.  
 exfoliative, 144  
 herpetiformis, 144  
 pruriginous, 189  
 seborrheic, 144
- Dermatomyositis, 150
- Dermatophytosis, 144
- Dermatoses  
 antihistamines for, 131 ff.  
   topical use, 143, 189 f.  
   pruritus in, 143 f.
- Dermographism: prevention and treatment, 138 f., 185
- Desensitization therapy  
 in allergy  
   and drug evaluation, 89  
   to prevent asthma, 192  
   value of, 105, 110 f.  
 chlorcyclizine and, 118  
 reactions to—prevention, 105 f., 147
- Desoxyephedrine: with antihistamines, 181
- Dexapyramine, 228
- Diatrin  
 agranulocytosis from, 206  
 antianaphylactic activity, 78  
 chemistry of, 41  
 dosage, 121, 172, 174  
 effectiveness, 41  
 effect on bronchoconstriction, 60  
 preparations, 223  
 for respiratory allergy, 121 f.  
 toxicity, 199, 206
- Digestive tract  
 absorption of antihistamines, 49, 169 f.  
 action of histamine on, 54  
 diseases, response to antihistamines, 158 f.  
 secretions, effect of antihistamines on, 68 f., 158 f.  
 untoward reactions to antihistamines, 58, 123, 195
- Dimenhydrinate, 221
- Di-Paralene, *see also* Chlorcyclizine  
 preparations, 221
- Diphenhydramine 8-chlorotheophyllinate, *see* Dramamine
- Diphenhydramine hydrochloride, *see also* Benadryl  
 preparations, 220 f.
- Disorientation: from antihistamines, 193, 203
- Dizziness: from antihistamines, 58, 194
- Dolopar, 227
- Dosage, *see also* Administration  
 average, minimum and maximum—for adults, 172  
 in children, 107, 170  
 conditions determining size, 168 ff.  
   activities of patient, 171  
   size and age of patient, 170  
 individual differences in response, 168 f.  
 of individual drugs, 173 ff.  
 intervals, 170, 176 f.  
 intravenous or intramuscular, 185 f.  
 large, effects of, 194, 203 f.  
 for nasal allergies, 106 ff.  
 oral, 183 f.  
 overdosage causing death, 209 ff.  
 units, 183 f.  
   proprietary preparations, 220 ff.



- Doses: table of, 172  
Doxylamine succinate, 222  
Dramamine  
  for motion sickness, 159 f.  
  for nausea of pregnancy, 160  
  preparations, 221  
  for radiation sickness, 162  
  side actions, 160  
  toxicity, 199  
Dysmenorrhea, 164 f.
- E
- Eczema, *see also* Dermatitis,  
  atopic  
  palpebral, 148  
Edema  
  angioneurotic, 132 f.  
  from egg white, in rat, 84 f.  
  laryngeal, 133, 185  
  pulmonary, from epineph-  
    rine, 70  
  in urticaria, 132  
883F: effect on tuberculin re-  
  action, 82  
Electrocardiogram: changes in,  
  from antihistamines,  
  205 f.  
Electroencephalogram: abnor-  
  malities, and antihista-  
  mines, 164  
Endophthalmitis phacoanaphy-  
  lactica, 148  
Environment: variables in, in  
  hay fever, 90  
Ephedrine  
  in asthma, 34, 182  
  combined with antihista-  
  mines, 181 f.  
Epilepsy: antihistamines in, 164  
Epinephrine  
  in allergic emergencies, 133,  
    185  
  in asthma and allergy, 33 f.,  
    113  
  causing pulmonary edema, 70  
  causing ventricular fibrilla-  
    tion, 72  
  effect on histamine action, 25  
  for serum sickness, 138  
Episcleritis, 149  
Erythema multiforme, 144  
Ethanalamine derivatives, 44 ff.  
Ethers, phenolic: combating  
  histamine, 31 f.  
Ethylenediamine derivatives, 36  
  ff.  
Excitation, 194 f., 196  
  in children, 107  
  with Thephorin, 128, 202  
Eye drops  
  Antistine, 115, 149, 186 f.  
  concentration, 187  
  Histadyl, 149, 187  
Eyes  
  action of histamine on pupil,  
    55  
  allergic conditions, 147 ff.  
  local anesthesia with antihis-  
    tamines, 57  
  recurrent erosion, 149  
  topical use of antihistamines  
    in, 149, 186 f.  
  toxic reactions to antihista-  
    mines, 205, 209
- F
- Federal Trade Commission, 216  
Fernoxydyne, 221  
Fibrillation, ventricular: experi-  
  mental, 72  
5512M (Ciba): in experimen-  
  tal nephritis, 85  
Flavonoids: antianaphylactic ef-  
  fects, 32 f.  
Fluorescein: change in capil-  
  lary permeability, 67  
p-Fluorobenzyl-DPE (Lederle)  
  antianaphylactic activity, 79  
  for atopic dermatitis, 142  
  chemistry, 43  
  dosage, 130, 172, 175 f.  
  effectiveness, 43  
  effect on bronchoconstriction,  
    60

- p-Fluorobenzyl-DPE (*cont.*)  
 histamine flare inhibition, 96  
 for respiratory allergy, 130  
 toxicity, 203  
 Food and Drug Administration,  
 151, 213, 216  
 47-83 (Burroughs Wellcome):  
 antianaphylactic activity,  
 78  
 Frostbite, 165

## G

- Gastritis, acute, 159  
 Gastrointestinal tract, *see* Di-  
 gestive tract  
 Glybrom, 229  
 Gout, allergic, 167

## H

- Hapamine, 28  
 Hay fever, 103 ff.  
 dosage and administration of  
 antihistamines, 106 ff.  
 environmental variables in,  
 90  
 grades of severity, 109 ff.  
 incidence of asthma in, 105,  
 192  
 response to antihistamines  
 incidence of, 108 ff.  
 with individual drugs, 114  
 ff.  
 nature of, 103 f.  
 subjective standards of, 111  
 of symptoms, 104 ff.  
 variations in seasons and  
 stages, 90, 105, 110  
 Heart  
 effects of antihistamines  
 in sensitized guinea pigs,  
 81  
 toxic, 196, 206  
 effects of histamine, 21 f., 54  
 Hemopoietic system: toxic ef-  
 fects of antihistamines,  
 205 ff.

- Heparin: in anaphylaxis, 18  
 Herpes corneae, 149, 187  
 Hetramine  
 antianaphylactic activity, 77  
 effect on bronchoconstriction,  
 60  
 Histacin, 228  
 Hista-Clopane, 225  
 Histadyl  
 antianaphylactic activity, 78  
 as antiemetic, 160  
 for atopic dermatitis, 141  
 chemistry of, 40  
 for contact dermatitis, 143  
 dosage, 122, 172, 174  
 effectiveness, 40  
 effect on bronchoconstriction,  
 60  
 eye drops, 149, 187  
 histamine flare inhibition, 96  
 preparations, 223 ff.  
 for respiratory allergy, 122  
 toxicity, 197, 199 f.  
 for urticaria, 134  
 Histafed, 223  
 Histaminase, 24  
 as histamine combatant, 21,  
 29  
 plasma level, in pregnancy,  
 28  
 Histamine, 13 ff., 52 ff.  
 aerosol, in experimental  
 methods, 61  
 in allergy, 23 f., 82 f.  
 in anaphylaxis, 14 ff.  
 antagonism of, 59 ff.  
 as antidote in antihistamine  
 poisoning, 212 f.  
 asthma, 93  
 in asthma, 22  
 azoprotein, in immunization,  
 27 f.  
 blood, 22  
 in anaphylaxis, 18, 22  
 chemistry of, 20  
 combating—methods, 24 ff.,  
 59 ff.



- cutaneous reaction to, 53, 65, 67, 93 ff.  
desensitization, 17, 25 ff.  
-excess hypothesis, 105, 113  
-inhibiting agents, 29  
metabolism, 21 f.  
minimum lethal dose, 61  
multiple lethal doses, 62  
pharmacologic effects, 20, 52 ff.  
physiologic actions, 20 ff.  
release mechanism, 15 f., 23 f.  
in secretions of common cold, 152  
in tissues, 14, 17, 23 f.  
tolerance for, 26  
wheal and flare  
    inhibition, in assay of antihistamines, 93 ff.  
    species difference, 67  
Histidine decarboxylase: in histamine formation, 32  
Hyaluronidase: and spread of allergic reactions, 71  
Hydriyllin, 122 f.  
    dosage, 122, 172, 174  
    effectiveness of, 182  
    histamine flare inhibition, 98  
    in nasal allergy, 108  
    preparations, 220 f.  
    toxicity, 197, 200  
Hyoscine: for motion sickness, 160  
Hyperglycemia: from Benadryl, 71  
Hypersensitivity  
    Arthus reaction, 81 f.  
    experimental, 73 ff.  
        cardiovascular, 83 f.  
    to injected agents, 146  
    responses other than histamine in, 87  
    to tuberculin, 82 f.  
Hypertension, 56  
    from antihistamines, 196, 206  
    in pregnancy, 166  
Hypotension: from antihistamines, 56, 196  
  
I  
Ileum, guinea pig: in experimental evaluation of antihistamines, 62 f., 81  
Infections  
    chronic nasal, antihistamines in diagnosis, 106  
    spread of, with antihistamines, 66 f., 165 f.  
Insect bites, 144, 166  
Insulin: allergy to, 147  
Intestines  
    antihistamine effects — experimental, 62 ff., 81  
    untoward effects of antihistamines, 195  
Iodides: for asthma, 34, 182  
Iontophoresis, 165  
    nasal, 189  
    for pruriginous dermatitis, 189  
Iridocyclitis, 148  
Iritis, 149  
Isuprel: for asthma, 112, 182  
  
J  
Jaundice  
    from antihistamine, 210  
    pruritus of, antihistamines for, 144  
  
K  
Keratoconjunctivitis, 148  
  
L  
Labyrinthitis, acute: from Benadryl, 205  
Lacrimation: histamine in, 70  
Leg cramps: nocturnal, 163  
Lichen chronicus circumscriptus, 144  
Lichen simplex chronicus, 144, 189

Light: sensitivity to, 167  
 Liver extract: allergy to, 147  
 Lungs  
   action of histamine on, 55  
   perfused, sensitized — effect  
     of antihistamines, 81  
 Lupus erythematosus, 150  
 Lymph: in histamine convec-  
   tion, 53

## M

Ménière's disease, 27  
 Mental tests: in toxicity assay  
   of drugs, 100  
 Mercodol, 222  
 Methapyrilene hydrochloride,  
   *see also* Thenylene  
   preparations, 223  
 Methoxylene, 225  
 Migraine, 27, 163 f.  
 Miliaria, 144  
 Monamines, 45 ff.  
 Monhiston, 227  
 Morphine-withdrawal symp-  
   toms: antihistamines in,  
   161  
 Motion sickness, 159 f.  
 Muscles  
   histamine action on, 21, 54 f.  
   intestinal, antispasmodic ac-  
     tion of antihistamines,  
     62 f., 81  
   tremors of, from antihista-  
     mines, 194, 204  
   uterine, antihistamine action  
     on, 64  
 Myocarditis, experimental: in-  
   hibition, 83 f.  
 Myotonia atrophica, 163

## N

Nasal sprays, 127, 187  
   for nasal allergy, 107 f.  
 Nausea  
   from antihistamines, 195  
   postoperative, prevention, 161  
   of pregnancy, prevention, 160

## Neo-Antergan

  antianaphylactic activity, 77,  
   81  
   in atopic dermatitis, 141  
   chemistry, 37 f.  
   dosage, 123, 172, 174  
     intravenous and intramus-  
       cular, 186  
   effectiveness, 38  
   effect on bronchoconstriction,  
     60  
   histamine flare inhibition, 96,  
     98  
   overdosage causing death, 211  
   preparations, 226 ff.  
   for pruritus of jaundice, 144  
   in radiation sickness, 161  
   for respiratory allergy, 123 f.  
   in topical anesthesia, 167  
   toxicity, 123, 197, 198, 200  
   for urticaria, 134

## Neo Cafotan, 227

## Neohetramine

  antianaphylactic activity, 77,  
   80  
   chemistry, 41 f.  
   for contact dermatitis, 143  
   dosage, 124, 172, 174 f.  
   effectiveness, 42  
   effect on bronchoconstriction,  
     60  
   histamine flare inhibition, 96  
   preparations, 229  
   for respiratory allergy, 124 f.  
   toxicity, 124, 197, 201  
   for urticaria, 135

## Neomine, 227

## Nephritis

  acute infectious, 166  
   experimental, 85, 149

## Nephrosis, 150

## Nervous system

  central, effects of antihista-  
     mines, 57 f., 164  
   diseases, response to antihis-  
     tamines, 162 ff.  
   severe toxic effects of anti-



histamines, 164, 203 ff.  
side actions of antihistamines,  
194

Nethaprin, 222

Neuralgia, trigeminal, 163

Neuritis: from Benadryl, 204

Neurodermatitis, disseminated,  
142

929F

antianaphylactic activity, 44,  
76

chemistry, 44

effect on bronchoconstriction,  
60

Norisodrine: for asthma, 112,  
182

Nose drops, 187

Nuclon, 226

## O

Ointment

Pyribenzamine, 141, 165,  
189, 208

Thephorin, 142, 144, 190,  
209

1571F

antianaphylactic activity, 76,  
80 f.

chemistry, 36 f.

effectiveness, 37

effect on bronchoconstriction,  
60

1627 (Searle): in experimen-  
tal cardiovascular le-  
sions, 84

1694 (Searle): in experimen-  
tal cardiovascular le-  
sions, 84

194B (White)

antianaphylactic activity, 78

chemistry, 42

dosage, 172, 176

effectiveness, 42 f.

effect on bronchoconstriction,  
60

histamine flare inhibition, 96

for respiratory allergy, 130

toxicity, 130, 202 f.

Ophthalmia, sympathetic: pre-  
vention, 148

Orthoxine

antianaphylactic activity, 79

for asthma, 182

## P

Paraminyl maleate, 226

Parkinson's disease, 162 f.

Penicillin reactions, 136

hazard of antihistamine pro-  
phylaxis, 138

Pentryl, 223

Peptic ulcer, 159

Perazil, *see also* Chlorcyclizine  
preparation, 221

Periarteritis nodosa, 149

experimental, inhibition, 83  
f.

Phenergan

antianaphylactic activity, 77

for atopic dermatitis, 141

chemistry, 38 f.

dosage, 125, 172, 175

effectiveness, 39

effect on allergic wheal by,  
99 f.

effect on bronchoconstriction,  
60

histamine flare inhibition, 96,  
98

for migraine, 163

for nausea and vomiting of  
pregnancy, 160

prolonged action of, 125

for respiratory allergy, 125 f.

side actions, 125

for urticaria, 135

Phenindamine tartrate, *see also*  
Thephorin  
preparations, 230 f.

Poison ivy, 143

Potassium: in experimental al-  
lergy, 29 f.

PPA capsule, 228

- Pregnancy  
 allergy in, 28  
 hypertension in, 166  
 nausea and vomiting of —  
   antihistamines for, 160
- Privine: with Antistine, 148, 187
- Proketal, 226
- Propenpyridamine, *see also* Trimeton  
 preparations, 231
- Pruritus, 143 ff.  
 ani  
   ointments for, 144, 189  
   suppositories for, 186  
 in atopic dermatitis, 139, 189  
 postscabetic, 144  
 response to antihistamines, 143 ff.  
 urticarial, 132  
 vulvae, 144
- Psoriasis, 144
- Pye capsule, 228
- Pyrabrom, 229
- Pyracol, 225
- Pyramal, 227
- Pyra-Maleate, 228
- Pyranisamine 8-bromtheophyllinate, 229
- Pyranisamine maleate, *see also* Neo-Antergan  
 preparations, 226 ff.  
 for seasickness, 160
- Pyrasal, 227
- Pyrazithiazine, 229 f.
- Pyrazin, 225
- Pyribenzamine  
 aerosols, 188  
 agranulocytosis from, 206  
 in allergic dermatitis, 83  
 antianaphylactic activity, 77 f., 80 f., 85  
 for atopic dermatitis, 141, 189  
 chemistry, 39  
 for contact dermatitis, 143  
 cream, 143, 189, 229  
 cutaneous eruption from, 207  
 dosage, 126, 172, 175  
 duration of action, 126  
 effectiveness, 39, 123  
 effect on bronchoconstriction, 60  
 in epilepsy, 164  
 histamine flare inhibition, 96, 98 f.  
 in nasal sprays, 187  
 ointment, 189  
   for atopic dermatitis, 141, 189  
   for pruritus ani, 144  
   sensitization to, 208  
   in sunburn, 165  
 in parkinsonism, 162  
 preparations, 229  
 for radiation sickness, 162  
 for respiratory allergy, 126 f.  
 for serum sickness, 137  
 subcutaneous implantation, 62  
 in topical anesthesia, 167  
 toxicity, 126, 197, 198, 201  
 for urticaria, 132, 135
- Pyrosis: from antihistamines, 195
- Pyrrolazote  
 chemistry, 42  
 dosage, 127, 172, 175  
 effectiveness, 42  
 effect on bronchoconstriction, 60  
 effect on histamine flare, 96  
 preparations, 229 f.  
 for respiratory allergy, 127  
 toxicity, 127, 201 f.
- Pyrroxate, 230
- R
- Radiation sickness, 161 f.
- Rash, *see also* Urticaria  
 from antihistamines, 207 f.  
 drug, antihistamines for, 133



- from Neo-Antergan, after irradiation, 161
- Reiter's syndrome, 148
- Renstamine, 228
- Respiration: effect of antihistamines on, 56
- Respiratory system
  - in anaphylaxis, 74
  - function studies, in asthma, 113
- Rheumatic fever, 150, 206
- Rhinitis
  - chronic vasomotor, 105
  - perennial vasomotor, 103 ff.
    - clinical results with individual drugs, 114 ff.
    - dosage and administration of antihistamines, 106 ff.
    - incidence of antihistamine effect, 108 ff.
- S
- Salicylates
  - antihistaminic effects, 30
  - for serum sickness, 137
- Scleritis, 148
- Scleroderma, 150
- Sclerosis, multiple, 163
- Seasickness, 159 f.
- Secretions
  - gastric
    - effect of antihistamines, 68 f., 158 f.
    - histamine action on, 54
  - glandular
    - effect of antihistamines, 68 ff.
    - histamine action on, 21
  - nasal, drying of, 195
- Sedacof, 226
- Sedation, 58, 193 f.
  - antihistamines for, 167
  - in asthma therapy, 34, 113
  - in atopic dermatitis, 140
  - in choice of drug, 179
  - and frequency of administration, 177
  - and size of dose, 171
- Sedatives: with antihistamines, 181
- Semikon, 225
- Serum sickness, 136 f.
  - hazard of prophylactic therapy, 138
- Shock
  - anaphylactic, *see* Anaphylaxis
  - in burns, histamine in, 67 f.
  - hemorrhagic, histamine in, 68
  - histamine, 13 ff.
    - prevention, 62, 79, 87
    - species difference, 73
- Side actions, *see also* Toxic effects
  - advantageous, 167, 192
  - common and minor, 192 ff.
- Skin
  - eruptions, from antihistamines, 207 ff.
  - tests
    - in assay of antihistamines, 93 ff., 99 f.
    - prevention of dermographism in, 138 f.
    - topical use of antihistamines on, 189 f.
- Status asthmaticus
  - Benadryl intravenously for, 186
  - hazard of antihistamine therapy, 210
- Stimulants
  - for antihistamine poisoning, 212
  - combined with antihistamines, 181
- Streptomycin therapy: reactions, 160
- Sulfonamide reactions: hazard of antihistamine prophylaxis, 138
- Sunburn: prevention, 165
- Suppositories, antihistamine, 186

## T

- Tagathen, *see also* Chlorothen preparations, 221
- Thenfadil  
 chemistry, 43  
 effectiveness, 43 f.  
 effect on bronchoconstriction, 60  
 preparations, 230
- Thenylene, *see also* under Histadyl  
 overdose causing death, 212  
 preparations, 223
- Thenylfred, 223
- Thenylpyramine hydrochloride, *see also* Histadyl  
 preparations, 223 ff.
- Thephorin  
 antianaphylactic activity, 78, 81  
 for atopic dermatitis, 142  
 chemistry, 47  
 dosage, 172, 175  
 effectiveness, 47 f.  
 effect on bronchoconstriction, 60  
 effect on histamine flare, 96  
 ointment, 190  
   for dermatitis, 142  
   for pruritus ani, 144  
 preparations, 230 f.  
 for respiratory allergy, 128 f.  
 sensitization to, 208, 209  
 toxicity, 128, 198, 202  
 for urticaria, 135
- Thonzylamine hydrochloride, *see also* Neohetramine  
 preparations, 229
- 3015RP  
 antianaphylactic activity, 77  
 chemistry of, 38  
 effectiveness, 38  
 effect on histamine flare, 96
- 3277RP, *see* Phenergan
- Thrombophlebitis migrans, 166
- Thylogen, 227
- Tolerance  
   for antihistamines, 111, 178, 192  
   histamine, 26
- Toxic effects, *see also* Excitation; Sedation; under specific drugs: 92, 191 ff.  
 antihistamine poisoning, 212 f.  
 cardiovascular, 196  
 in children, 107  
 on circulatory and hemopoietic systems, 205 ff.  
 deaths, 209 ff.  
 drug combinations avoiding, 181  
 dryness, 195  
 gastrointestinal, 195  
 of individual drugs, 196 ff.  
 on nervous system, 203 ff.  
 severe, 203 ff.  
 from topical use, 189, 207  
 and unnecessary use, 178  
 urinary, 196
- Toxicity  
   of antihistamines, 58  
   therapeutic/toxicity ratio, 100  
   and size of dose, 171
- Trimeton  
 antianaphylactic activity, 78  
 chemistry, 45 f.  
 for contact dermatitis, 143  
 cutaneous reaction to, 208  
 dosage, 129, 172, 175  
 for eczema, 142  
 effectiveness, 46, 123  
 effect on bronchoconstriction, 60  
 effect on histamine flare, 96  
 preparations, 231  
 for respiratory allergy, 129 f.  
 sedation with, 129  
 toxicity, 129, 198, 202  
 for urticaria, 136



- Tripelennamine hydrochloride,  
    *see also* Pyribenzamine  
    preparations, 229
- Tuberculin sensitivity: effect of  
    antihistamines on, 82 f.,  
    150 f.
- Tuberculosis, 150 f.
- 2239RP, *see* Antergan
- 2325RP: antianaphylactic ac-  
    tivity, 76, 80 f.
- U
- Ulcers, gastric: from histamine,  
    69
- Ultraviolet rays: absorption of,  
    by antihistamines, 165
- Urinary disturbances: from an-  
    tihistamines, 196, 204
- Urticaria  
    from antihistamines, 208  
    response to antihistamines,  
    131 f.
- Uterus  
    action of histamine on, 54 f.  
    effects of antihistamines on,  
    64
- Uveitis, anaphylactic: preven-  
    tion, 85, 148
- V
- Vascular system  
    effect of antihistamines on,  
    66  
    histamine action on, 22 f.
- Vomiting  
    from antihistamines, 195  
    postoperative, 161  
    of pregnancy, 160
- W
- Wheal and flare reaction  
    to codeine, 67  
    to histamine, 21, 93 f.  
    inhibition of, 94 ff., 97 ff.
- Z
- 01003 (Lilly)  
    antianaphylactic activity, 78  
    effect on histamine flare, 96
- 01780 (Lilly)  
    antianaphylactic activity, 78  
    effect on histamine flare, 96





















20/7/55  
checked 2

O.V.C.V. 7.1  
17/8/89 ✓

25982

CHECKED

25-97

CHECKED  
2008

VERIFIED  
2013

CFTRI-MYSORE



2597

Antihistamines



